# Reverse Engineering the Eview Code in the FRB/US Model

Gary Young

June 19, 2016

ii June 19, 2016

# Contents

1	Intr	roduction	1				
2	FRI 2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4 2.5 2.6	example4 program	3 7 11 17 23				
3	Model Consistent Expectation Solve Package						
	3.1	example1 program	11				
	3.2	example2 program	14				
	3.3	example3 program	17				
	3.4	example4 program	51				
	3.5	example5 program	54				
4	State Space Package 59						
	4.1	Estimate Model	59				
	4.2	Data Transformations	33				
	4.3	Estimation Code	66				
	4.4	Supply Filter	70				
	4.5		73				
5	Dat	ta Only Package 7	<b>7</b> 5				
6	App	pendices 7	7				
Re	outin	ne Libraries 7	79				
	6.1	Master Library	79				
		· ·	79				
		- •	30				
			31				
			31				
			32				

iv June 19, 2016

	6.1.6	interpolate unavailable observations 83
	6.1.7	set fiscal policy option
	6.1.8	set monetary policy option
	6.1.9	set monetary policy fed funds rate
6.2	mce so	olve library
	6.2.1	mce solve library change history 80
	6.2.2	run model consistent expectations
	6.2.3	determine endogenous and exogenous variables 99
	6.2.4	determine default method, linesearch, and other options . 98
	6.2.5	parse options containing equal signs
	6.2.6	parse options not containing equal signs
	6.2.7	create common variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and
		tables
	6.2.8	model consistent coefficient simulation
	6.2.9	solve model consistent instrument values
	6.2.10	compute derivatives of mce targets wrt mce instruments . 110
	6.2.11	model consistent coefficient non-monotone step-length pro-
		cedure
	6.2.12	model consistent armijo optimization rule
		variable terminal values
	6.2.14	set options based on defaults and overrides 12
	6.2.15	main unconstrained optimal control simulation 13
	6.2.16	main optimal control simulation with inequality constraints 138
		model consistent optimal time-consistent solution 143
		compute derivatives of loss function targets wrt instruments 15.
		solve model consistent expectations model 153
		convert mcz inequality constraints
		shift left
		find next delimiter
		load frbus with transformed subsidiary model 160
	6.2.24	create wage and expectation variables in forward looking
		model
D.1 G		1.01
	ontents	
6.3	-	16°
	6.3.1	setup script
<i>C</i> 4	6.3.2	check script
6.4	6.4.1	package
	6.4.1 $6.4.2$	ld.frbus.cfs
	6.4.2 $6.4.3$	I
	$6.4.4 \\ 6.4.5$	ld.mce.eqs
	6.4.6	±
	6.4.0 $6.4.7$	
	6.4.7 $6.4.8$	9
	0.4.8	example1

 $\mathrm{June}\ 19,\ 2016 \qquad \qquad \mathrm{v}$ 

	6.4.9	example2
	6.4.10	example3
		example4
		ocpolicy
		pings
		plot.resids
		stochsim
		master.library
		mce.solve.library
6.5		olve package
	6.5.1	example1
	6.5.2	example2
	6.5.3	example3
	6.5.4	example4
	6.5.5	example5
	6.5.6	mce.solve.library
6.6	state s	space package
	6.6.1	data.transformations
	6.6.2	estimation.code
	6.6.3	frbus.supply.estimation
	6.6.4	frbus.supply.filter
	6.6.5	initial.values
Notes,	Biblio	graphy and Indexes 217
6.7	Chunk	s
6.8	Index	

vi June 19, 2016

# Chapter 1

# Introduction

2 June 19, 2016

## Chapter 2

# FRB/US Package

### 2.1 example1 program

```
\langle frbus\ example 1\ 3 \rangle \equiv
                                                     (186c)
 ' Program for simple simulation under VAR expectations
 ^{\prime} See FRB/US Simulation Basics document for information about
 ' this program
 ' Initial filename and parameter settings
 ' Subroutines
   include ../subs/master_library
 ' Workfile
   %wfstart = "1975q1"
   %wfend = "2030q4"
   %mainpage = "main"
   wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
 ' FRB/US model name and location
   %varmod = "stdver"
   %varpath = "../mods/"
 ' Input datbase
   %dbin = "../data/longbase"
 ' Simulation range
   %simstart = "2020q1"
```

call group2zero("endog\_aerr")

{%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)

' Assign baseline tracking add factors

{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"

' Standard solution options

smpl %simstart %simend
{%varmod}.addassign @all
{%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all

%suftrk = "\_0"

```
{%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
' Simulate a shock to monetary policy rule
%sufsim = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rffintay_aerr = rffintay_aerr + 1
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.solve
' Make a graph
smpl %simstart %simend
 series zero = 0
 series d_rff = rff{%sufsim} - rff
 series d_rg10 = rg10{%sufsim} - rg10
 series d_lur = lur{%sufsim} - lur
 series d_pic4 = pic4{%sufsim} - pic4
 graph fig1a.line zero d_rff
 fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
 fig1a.legend -display
 graph fig1b.line zero d_rg10
 fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
 fig1b.legend -display
 graph fig1c.line zero d_lur
 fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
 fig1c.legend -display
 graph fig1d.line zero d_pic4
 fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
```

```
6 frbuseview.nw June 19, 2016
```

```
fig1d.legend -display
graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) Macroeconomic Effects of Funds Rate Pertur
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1
```

#### Defines:

example1, used in chunk 168.
Uses group2zero 81a, groupnew 82, ld\_frbus\_cfs 169a 169b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 170b 171,
set\_fp 84, and set\_mp 85a.

### 2.2 example2 program

```
\langle frbus\ example2\ 7 \rangle \equiv
                                                 (186d)
 ' Program for simple simulation with MCE expectations
 ' The switch variables 'mcvars_wp and 'mcvars_all control whether
 ' the assumption of MC expectations extends beyond the financial
 , sector
 ' See the Simulation Basics document for information about
 ' this program
 ' Initial filename and parameter settings
 ' Subroutines
   include ../subs/master_library
   include ../subs/mce_solve_library
 ' Workfile
   %wfstart = "1975q1"
   %wfend = "2100q4"
   %mainpage = "main"
   wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
 ' FRB/US model names and locations
   %varmod = "stdver"
   %varpath = "../mods/"
   %mcemod = "pfver"
   %mcepath = "../mods/"
 ' Input datbase
   %dbin = "../data/longbase"
 ' Simulation range
   %simstart = "2020q1"
   %simend = "2069q4"
 ' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
 ' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
```

```
' Specify MC expectations variables
     %mcvars_wp = "yes"
    %mcvars_all = "no"
' MCE asset pricing
    %zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zpib
' MCE elsewhere
    if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
          %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
    if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
          %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
          %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxbi zxbs :
           endif
' Load equations and coefficients
     call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,
' Load data
    dbopen %dbin as longdata
    fetch(d=longdata) *
' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
     smpl @all
    call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)
' Set monetary policy
    smpl @all
    call set_mp("dmpintay")
' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
    smpl @all
    dmptrsh = 0
    rffmin = -9999
    drstar = 0
' Set fiscal policy
     smpl @all
    call set_fp("dfpsrp")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
    smpl @all
     {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
    call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
```

```
call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {%mcemod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
 {%mcemod}.addassign @all
 {%mcemod}.addinit(v=n) @all
' Simulate a monetary policy shock
%sufsim = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 {%mcemod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rffintay_a = rffintay_a + 1
 %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
 %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
 %simstr = "type=single"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
' Make a graph
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 series zero = 0
 series d_rff = rff{%sufsim} - rff
```

```
series d_rg10 = rg10{%sufsim} - rg10
series d_lur = lur{%sufsim} - lur
series d_pic4 = pic4{%sufsim} - pic4
graph fig1a.line zero d_rff
fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
fig1a.legend -display
graph fig1b.line zero d_rg10
fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
fig1b.legend -display
graph fig1c.line zero d_lur
fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
fig1c.legend -display
graph fig1d.line zero d_pic4
fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
fig1d.legend -display
graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
%title = " Macroeconomic Effects of Funds Rate Shock\r"
if %mcvars_wp = "no" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
 %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing)"
if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
 %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing and Price-Wage Setting)"
  endif
if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
 %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in All Sectors)"
fig1.addtext(t, just(c), font("Arial", 16)) {%title}
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1
```

#### Defines:

example2, used in chunk 168.

Uses group2zero 81a, groupnew 82, make\_frbus\_mcevars 164, mce\_load\_frbus 160, mce\_run 88, mce\_solve\_library 210 215a, set\_fp 84, and set\_mp 85a.

### 2.3 example3 program

11  $\langle frbus\ example 3\ 11 \rangle \equiv$  (187a)

- $^{\prime}$  Program for simulation under VAR expectations that illustrates how
- ' to set the monetary policy options that impose the zero lower bound
- ' on the funds rate and delay the liftoff of the funds rate from the
- ' ZLB until either the unemployment rate falls below a threshold or
- ' inflation rises above a threshold.
- ' See FRB/US Simulation Basics document for general information about
- ' this program.
- ' Additional notes:
- ' 1. The scenario involves a set of negative aggregate demand
- ' shocks and a positive risk premium shock that start in 2003q3,
- ' when the baseline (historical) funds rate is about one percent.
- ' The shocks are equal to the equation errors actually observed
- ' in the four quarters starting in 2008q4.
- ' 2. To impose the ZLB set %zb = "yes" (rather than "no")
- ' 3. To impose the policy liftfoff threshold conditions set both
- ' %zb = "yes" and %threshold = "yes". For illustrative purposes
- ' and reflecting the baseline conditions in 2003 and the years
- ' that immediately follow, the inflation threshold is set to 3.0
- ' and the unemployment threshold is set to 7.0, subject to the
- ' the adjustments described next.
- ' 4. Because the threshold conditions only make sense once the ZLB is
- ' binding, unemployment is above its threshold level (lurtrsh),
- ' and inflation is below its threshold (pitrsh), which is not the
- ' case in the initial simulation quarters, the program turns on the
- ' threshold code (using dmptrsh) in the 5th simulation quarter,
- ' at which point these conditions hold. In addition, for the threshold
- ' code to work properly, the endogenous switch variable dmptr must be
- ' zero in the quarter prior to the quarter in which the threshold code is
- ' turned on. This is accomplished by setting the baseline data on dmptr
- ' to zero and by setting the unemployment and inflation thresholds
- ' (lurtrsh, pitrsh) to values in the first four simulation quarters that
- ' would not flip the dmptr switch to one.
- ' 4. Choose one of the five available policy rules by setting
- ' %policy to one of rffintay, rfftay, rfftlr, rffalt, or rffgen.
- ' 5. If neither the ZLB or thresholds are imposed, the monetary policy

' equations have baseline-tracking adds and the simulation is

```
' a standard deviations-from-baseline exercise.
' 6. If either the ZLB or thresholds are imposed, the add factors on
' monetary policy equations are set to zero after the tracking adds
' are computed so that the ZLB and threshold conditions are based on the
' actual simulated outcomes for the funds rate and inflation and unemployment,
' not their deviations from baseline.
' Initial filename and parameter settings
, Subroutines
 include ../subs/master_library
' Workfile
 %wfstart = "1975q1"
 %wfend = "2012q4"
 %mainpage = "main"
 wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
' FRB/US model name and location
 %varmod = "stdver"
 %varpath = "../mods/"
' Input datbase
 %dbin = "../data/longbase"
' Simulation range
 %simstart = "2003q3"
 %simend = "2008q2"
' Policy
 %zb = "yes"
 %threshold = "yes"
 %policy = "rfftay"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' Load equations and coefficients
 ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
```

```
ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
, Load data
 dbopen %dbin as longbase
 fetch(d=longbase) *
' Set monetary policy rule
 smpl @all
 %policydmp = @replace(%policy,"rff","dmp")
 call set_mp(%policydmp)
, Set ZLB
 if %zb = "yes" then
   rffmin = .125
   else
   rffmin = -9999
   endif
' Set threshold variables
 if %threshold = "yes" then
   if %zb = "no" then
     @uiprompt("When policy thresholds are imposed, the zero bound must also be imposed")
     stop
     endif
   smpl @all
   call dateshift(%simstart,%quarter4,3)
  ' thresholds (dmptrsh and dmptr) not active in first 4 qtrs
   smpl %simstart - 1 %quarter4
   dmptrsh = 0
   lurtrsh = -9999
   pitrsh = 9999
   dmptr = 0
  ' thresholds (dmptrsh and dmptr) active starting in qtr 5
   smpl %quarter4 + 1 %simend
   dmptrsh = 1
   lurtrsh = 7.0
   pitrsh = 3.0
   smpl @all
   else
   smpl @all
   dmptrsh = 0
   endif
 smpl @all
 drstar = 0
```

14

```
' Set fiscal policy
 smpl @all
 call set_fp("dfpsrp")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart 2012q4
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
' Set monetary policy add factors to zero when ZLB or threshold are
' imposed
 if %zb = "yes" then
   smpl @all
   {\text{mpolicy}}_a = 0
   rffrule_a = 0
   rffe_a = 0
   if %threshold = "yes" then
     dmptpi_a = 0
     dmptlur_a = 0
     dmptmax_a = 0
     dmptr_a = 0
     endif
   endif
' Simulation
```

```
%sufsim = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
' shock values are taken from equation residuals for 2008q4-2009q3
 eco_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.006, -.006, -.011, -.001
 ecd_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.091, -.018, -.021, .029
 eh_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.076, -.078, -.040, .073
 epd_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.096, -.062, .014, .032
 eps_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.018, -.046, -.036, -.017
 rbbbp_a.fill(o=%simstart) 2.70, 0.38, -0.89, -1.35
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.solve
' Make a graph
smpl %simstart %simend
 graph fig1a.line rff rff{%sufsim}
 fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
 fig1a.legend -display
 graph fig1b.line rg10 rg10{%sufsim}
 fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
 fig1b.legend -display
 graph fig1c.line lur lur{%sufsim}
 fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
 fig1c.legend -display
 graph fig1d.line pic4 pic4{%sufsim}
 fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
 fig1d.legend -display
 %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Negative AD Shock\r(VAR Expectations"
 %title = %title + "; Policy = " + %policy + ")"
 if %zb = "yes" and %threshold = "no" then
   %title = %title + "\r(ZLB Imposed)"
   endif
 if %zb = "yes" and %threshold = "yes" then
   %title = %title + "\r(ZLB and Thresholds Imposed)"
   endif
```

```
graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) {%title}
fig1.addtext(b,just(c),font("Arial",16)) Blue: Actual; Red: Simulated
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1
```

#### Defines:

example3, used in chunk 168. Uses dateshift 79, group2zero 81a, groupnew 82, ld\_frbus\_cfs 169a 169b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 170b 171, set\_fp 84, and set\_mp 85a.

### 2.4 example4 program

' Simulation range

```
17
     \langle frbus\ example 4\ 17 \rangle \equiv
                                                              (187b)
       ' This MCE example program illustrates:
       ' 1. how to use a monetary policy rule that is not one of the policy
          alternatives included in FRB/US;
       ' 2. how to add new MCE expectations variables;
       ' 3. how to drop one of the regular FRB/US equations as part of the process
          of loading the model
       ' Most of the code needed illustrate these issues is located between
       ' the "start of new code" and "end of new code" comments below
       ' The switch variables %mcvars_wp and %mcvars_all control whether
       ' the assumption of MC expectations extends beyond the financial
       , sector
       ' See the Simulation Basics document for information about
       ' this program
       ' Initial filename and parameter settings
       ' Subroutines
         include ../subs/master_library
         include ../subs/mce_solve_library
       ' Workfile
         %wfstart = "1975q1"
         %wfend = "2100q4"
         %mainpage = "main"
         wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
       ' FRB/US model names and locations
         %varmod = "stdver"
         %varpath = "../mods/"
         %mcemod = "pfver"
         %mcepath = "../mods/"
       ' Input datbase
         %dbin = "../data/longbase"
```

```
%simstart = "2010q1"
    %simend = "2069q4"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' Specify MC expectations variables
   %mcvars_wp = "no"
   %mcvars_all = "yes"
' MCE asset pricing
   %zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zpib
' MCE elsewhere
    if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
        %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
        endif
    if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
       %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
        %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxbi zxbs :
        endif
' Load equations and coefficients
' drop one of the FRB/US monetary policy rule equations (rffgen) so that it can be
' replaced below with an alternative rule
   %allbut = "rffgen"
   call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,
' Load data
    dbopen %dbin as longdata
    fetch(d=longdata) *
' start of new code (aside from the change above to mce_load_frbus and
                                            the change below to the call to set_mp)
' Code a first-difference interest rate rule as rffgen. The first-difference rule de
' the expected output gap three quarters ahead (zgap3) and on expected 4-qtr inflation
```

' quarters ahead (zpic43). The name of each new expectation must start with a "z". {\( \)varmod\).append rffgen-rffgen\_aerr = rffe(-1) + .5\*(zpic43-pitarg) + .5\*(zgap3-zgap3-zgap4).

```
' Add the MCE definitions of zgap3 and zpic43 to the forward-looking model,
' noting that the MCE names of these variables must start with a "w" rather than a "z".
 {\mcemod}.append wgap3-wgap3_aerr = xgap2(3)
 {%mcemod}.append wpic43-wpic43_aerr = picx4(3)
' Add expectations error equations to the MCE model
 {%mcemod}.append ezgap3 = zgap3-wgap3
 {\mcemod}.append ezpic43 = zpic43-wpic43
' Add to the backward-looking model simple equations for the new expectations variables.
' Technically, these equations should be the appropriate VAR expectations formulas, but
' because in this program these expectations will always be MCE, the form of their
' backward-looking identities is not very important.
 {%varmod}.append zgap3-zgap3_aerr = .5*xgap2(-1)
 {\wormod}.append zpic43-zpic43\_aerr = .5*picx4(-1)+.5*ptr(-1)
' Add the new MCE variables to the %zvars string
 %zvars = %zvars + " zgap3 zpic43"
' Define baseline values of the new expectations variables
 smpl @all
 series zgap3 = xgap2(3)
 series zpic43 = picx4(3)
' Make sure that the baseline data for rffgen matches the baseline data for rffe
 rffgen = rffe
' end of new code
' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
 smpl @all
 call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)
' Set monetary policy to use the first-difference policy rule (coded as rffgen)
 smpl @all
 call set_mp("dmpgen")
' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
 smpl @all
 dmptrsh = 0
 rffmin = -9999
 drstar = 0
' Set fiscal policy
```

```
smpl @all
 call set_fp("dfpsrp")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {\mbox{\em mcemod}}. solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
 {%mcemod}.addassign @all
 {%mcemod}.addinit(v=n) @all
' Simulate the effects of a one-percent consumption shock
%sufsim = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 {%mcemod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 eco_a = eco_a + .01
 %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
 %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
 %simstr = "type=single"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
```

```
' Make a graph
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 series zero = 0
 series d_rff = rff{%sufsim} - rff
 series d_rg10 = rg10{%sufsim} - rg10
 series d_lur = lur{%sufsim} - lur
 series d_pic4 = pic4{%sufsim} - pic4
 graph fig1a.line zero d_rff
 fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
 fig1a.legend -display
 graph fig1b.line zero d_rg10
 fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
 fig1b.legend -display
 graph fig1c.line zero d_lur
 fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
 fig1c.legend -display
 graph fig1d.line zero d_pic4
 fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
 fig1d.legend -display
 graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
 %title = " Macroeconomic Effects of a Shock to Consumption\r"
 if %mcvars_wp = "no" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
   %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing)"
 if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
   %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing and Price-Wage Setting)"
   endif
 if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
   %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in All Sectors)"
 fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) {%title}
 fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
 show fig1
```

#### Defines:

example4, used in chunk 168.

Uses group2zero 81a, groupnew 82, make\_frbus\_mcevars 164, mce\_load\_frbus 160, mce\_run 88,

 ${\tt mce\_solve\_library~210~215a,~set\_fp~84,~and~set\_mp~85a.}$ 

### 2.5 ocpolicy program

```
23
     \langle frbus\ ocpolicy\ 23\rangle \equiv
                                                                (187c)
       ' Routine to simulate how the SEP baseline forecast would change if
       ' policymakers commit to a path for the federal funds rate that is
       ' determined by optimal-control (OC) techniques to minimize a
       ' quadratic loss function.
       ' Detailed information on the mechanics of the OC algorithm and the
       ' various required and optional parameters that set up and guide its
       ' execution is available in the MCE Solve Users Guide in the
       ' documentation directory. Most relevant is the part of section 5
       ' that describes the "opt" simulation type as well as table 7.
       ' As specified below, the loss function penalizes equally weighted
       ' squared deviations of the unemployment rate from the natural rate,
       ' squared deviations of inflation from a 2 percent, and squared
       ' quarterly changes in the funds rate.
       ' In the SEP baseline, agents with model-consistent (MC) expectations
       ' are initially assumed to project that the funds rate will follow the
       ' baseline path and to set their baseline expectations
       ' accordingly. At the start of the optimal control simulation, however,
       ' these agents immediately and fully revise their expectations to be
       ' consistent with the revision to the funds rate path that occurs under
       ' optimal control -- that is, agents have rational expectations and
       ' announced policy actions are completely credible.
       ' The experiment can be run with the zero lower bound (ZLB) imposed
       ' (%zerobound = "yes") or not imposed (%zerobound = "no"). When
       ' the ZLB is imposed, a penalty term is added to the loss function.
       ' Initial filename and parameter settings
       ' Subroutines
         include ../subs/master_library
         include ../subs/mce_solve_library
       ' Workfile
         %wfstart = "1975q1"
         %wfend = "2100q4"
         %mainpage = "main"
         wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
```

24

```
' FRB/US model names and locations
 %varmod = "stdver"
 %varpath = "../mods/"
 %mcemod = "pfver"
 %mcepath = "../mods/"
' Input datbase
 %dbin = "../data/longbase"
' Simulation range
 %simstart = "2014q4"
 %simend = "2070q4"
' Primary loss function parameters: The value of the policy instrument
' is chosen optimally from %drvstart to %drvend (60 qtrs) to minimize
' the loss function from %evlstart to %evlend (80 qtrs). The three
' arguments of the period loss function are weighted by the the
' weight parameters and over time losses are discounted at the rate
' %discount
 %evlstart = %simstart
 %drvstart = %simstart
 call dateshift(%evlstart,%evlend,79)
 call dateshift(%drvstart, %drvend, 59)
 %discount = ".99"
 %u_weight = "1.0"
 %p_weight = "1.0"
 %r_{weight} = "1.0"
' Optionally impose the zero lower bound
 %zerobound = "yes"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' Specify MC expectations variables
 %mcvars_wp = "yes"
 %mcvars_all = "no"
' MCE asset pricing
 %zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zpib
' MCE elsewhere
 if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
```

```
%zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
    if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
         %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
         %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxnfbi zxnfbs zyh zyh
          endif
' Load equations and coefficients
    call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,
' Add a ugap equation
    {%varmod}.append ugap - ugap_aerr = lur - lurnat
' Load data
    dbopen %dbin as longdata
    fetch(d=longdata) *
' Define SEP-consistent ustar and ugap series; this step is needed because
' the baseline value of lurnat may not be fully SEP-consistent in the
' short-to-medium ruun
    smpl @all
    series ustar = lurnat
    smpl %simstart 2025q4
    ustar = 5.35
    smpl @all
    series ugap = lur-ustar
    series ugap_aerr = 0
' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
    call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)
' Set monetary policy option (the residual on the equation of
' the chosen option is the OC policy instrument)
    smpl @all
    call set_mp("dmptay")
' Initially turn off zero lower bound; if %zerobound = "yes", it will be
' imposed below by adding a penalty term to the loss function.
    smpl @all
    rffmin = -9999
' Turn off policy thresholds
    dmptrsh = 0
' Let the perceived equilibrium real interest rate vary
    drstar = 1
```

```
' Set fiscal policy so that it is exogenous for first 20 qtrs and then
' turns on debt targeting rule
 smpl %simstart %simstart + 19
 call set_fp("dfpex")
 smpl %simstart + 20 %simend
 call set_fp("dfpdbt")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {\text{warmod}}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {%mcemod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   endif
 {%mcemod}.addassign @all
 {%mcemod}.addinit(v=n) @all
' optimal policy setup
' The policy instrument is a time varying constant in the equation
' for the selected policy rule
 group opt_instrus rfftay_aerr
' Loss function variables (unemployment gap, 4-qtr PCE inflation,
' and the first difference of the federal funds rate)
 group opt_targs ugap pic4 delrff
```

```
' The desired paths of the loss function variables are specified in
' series with "_t" suffix.
 smpl @all
 series ugap_t = 0
 series delrff_t = 0
 series pic4_t = 2.0
' The weights on the loss function arguments are specified in
' series with "_w" suffix.
 series ugap_w = @val(%u_weight)
 series pic4_w = @val(%p_weight)
 series delrff_w = @val(%r_weight)
 !discount = @val(%discount)
 smpl %simstart+1 %simend
 ugap_w = !discount * ugap_w(-1)
 pic4_w = !discount * pic4_w(-1)
 delrff_w = !discount * delrff_w(-1)
' Zero bound penalty function
 if %zerobound = "yes" then
   {%varmod}.append penalty - penalty_aerr = _
      @recode(rff<(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift), _</pre>
        3.0*((rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift)-rff), _
        0) _
    + @recode(rff<(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift), _
       .10*exp(10*(rff-(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift))), _
       .10*exp(-20*(rff-(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift))))
   smpl @all
   series rff_lo_bnd = .125
   series rff_lo_shift = .00
   series penalty = 0
   series penalty_aerr = 0
   series rffmin = -9999
   %penalty_weight = "10.0"
   opt_targs.add penalty
   smpl @all
   series penalty_a = 0
   series penalty_t = 0
   series penalty_w = @val(%penalty_weight)
   smpl %simstart+1 %simend
   penalty_w = !discount * penalty_w(-1)
   endif
```

```
' optimal policy simulation
%sufcontrol = "_1"
' In %simstr, the "type=opt" string designates a commitment-based
'OC simulation. The required "instrus" and "targs" keywords point to
' the groups containing the policy instrument(s) and target variables.
' FRB/US simulations of this type generally run much more quickly with
' the newton MCE algorithm than they do with gnewton.
 %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
 %algstr = "jinit=interp(4), meth=newton"
 %simstr = "type=opt,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
 %simstr = %simstr + ",scen,suf=" + %sufcontrol+ ",solveopt=%sopt"
 %simstr = %simstr + ",lend=" + %evlend + ",iend=" + %drvend + ",lmax=20"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
' When the ZLB is imposed, run the OC algorithm a second time,
' after adjusting the intercept of the penalty function,
' to hit ZLB more closely
 if %zerobound = "yes" then
   smpl if rff{%sufcontrol} <.2</pre>
   rff_lo_shift = .125 - rff{%sufcontrol}
   %modstr = ""
   %algstr = ""
   %simstr = "type=opt,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
   %simstr = %simstr + ",solveopt=%sopt"
   %simstr = %simstr + ",lend=" + %evlend + ",iend=" + %drvend + ",lmax=20"
   smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
' graph results
call dateshift(%simstart, %graphstart, -8)
 call dateshift(%simstart,%graphend,32)
 smpl %graphstart %graphend
 graph fig1a.line rff{%sufcontrol} rff
 fig1a.options size(7,4.2)
 fig1a.legend display -inbox position(3.8,2.8) font("arial",15)
```

```
fig1a.datelabel format(yy)
fig1a.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1a.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1a.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1a.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1a.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) Federal Funds Rate
smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1b.line rg10{%sufcontrol} rg10
fig1b.options size(7,4.2)
fig1b.legend display -inbox position(3.8,2.8) font("arial",15)
fig1b.datelabel format(yy)
fig1b.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1b.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1b.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1b.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1b.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1c.line lur{%sufcontrol} lur
fig1c.options size(7,4.2)
fig1c.legend display -inbox position(3.9,0.3) font("arial",15)
fig1c.datelabel format(yy)
fig1c.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1c.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1c.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1c.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1c.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) Unemployment Rate
smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1d.line pic4{%sufcontrol} pic4
fig1d.options size(7,4.2)
fig1d.legend display -inbox position(0.5,0.2) font("arial",15)
fig1d.datelabel format(yy)
fig1d.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1d.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1d.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1d.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1d.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) PCE Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
```

```
graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
if %mcvars_wp = "no" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
        %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Optimal-Control Policy with Rational Expectat:
         endif
 if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
        \%title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Optimal-Control Policy\n With Rational Expectation of Optimal-Co
if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
        %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Optimal-Control Policy With Full Rational Expe
         endif
 if %zerobound = "yes" then
        %title = %title + "\rZLB Imposed"
        %title = %title + "\rZLB not Imposed"
         endif
fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",20)) {%title}
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1
```

#### Defines:

 ${\tt ocpolicy},$  used in chunk 168.

Uses dateshift 79, group2zero 81a, groupnew 82, make\_frbus\_mcevars 164, mce\_load\_frbus 160, mce\_run 88, mce\_solve\_library 210 215a, set\_fp 84, and set\_mp 85a.

## 2.6 pings program

```
\langle simulate \ six \ ping \ simulations, \ aka \ simple \ IRFs \ 31 \rangle \equiv
                                                          (187d)
 ' Simulate six ping simulations (AKA simple IRFs)
 , Notes:
 ' 1. Choose between VAR expectations and several MCE alternatives
 ' with the %mcevars parameter.
     - %mcevars = "none"
                         => VAR expectations everywhere
     - %mcevars = "mcap" => MCE in asset pricing, VAR expectations elsewhere
     - %mcevars = "mcapwp" => MCE in asset pricing and price-wage setting;
          VAR expectations elsewhere
     - %mcevars = "all"
                        => MCE everywhere
 'Note that even when %mcevars = "none", the program does many
 ' of the setup steps for an MCE simulation even though it never
 ' uses what they create.
 ' 2. Seven of the pings are one-time shocks to the residual of an
  ' equation whose structure contains a large autoregressive
 ' element. The remaining ping involves a permanent increase in the
 ' level of trend MFP.
 ' 3. The eight pings are:
     - A 100 basis point upward shock to the rffintay monetary
       policy rule
     - An increase in federal purchases equal to one percent of
      baseline GDP
     - A one percent permanent increase in the level of trend MPF
     - A 100 bp increase in the equity premium
     - A $10 per barrel increase in the price of oil
     - A 1 percent (ar) increase in the growth rate of
      multifactor productivity
     - Increases of 100 basis points to the 10-year Treasury term premium,
       75 basis points to the 5-year premium, and 30 basis points to the
       30-year premium
     - A 10 percent increase in the (real) exchange rate
 ' Initial filename and parameter settings
```

' Subroutines

```
include ../subs/master_library
    include ../subs/mce_solve_library
' Workfile
    %wfstart = "1975q1"
    %wfend = "2100q4"
    %mainpage = "main"
    wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
' FRB/US model names and locations
    %varmod = "stdver"
    %varpath = "../mods/"
    %mcemod = "pfver"
    %mcepath = "../mods/"
' Input datbase
    %dbin = "../data/longbase"
' Simulation range
    %simstart = "2020q1"
    %simend = "2069q4"
'Choose an expectations option ("none" => VAR expectations, "mcap", "mcapwp", "all"
    %mcevars = "none"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' MCE variable setup
    if %mcevars = "none" then
         %zvars = "zpic58 "
         %zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zp
         if %mcevars = "mcapwp" or %mcevars = "all" then
              %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
              endif
         if %mcevars = "all" then
              %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxbi zxb;
              endif
         endif
' Load equations and coefficients
    call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,
```

```
' Load data
 dbopen %dbin as longdata
 fetch(d=longdata) *
' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
 smpl @all
 call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)
' Set monetary policy
 smpl @all
 call set_mp("dmpintay")
' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
 smpl @all
 dmptrsh = 0
 rffmin = -9999
 drstar = 0
' Set fiscal policy
 smpl @all
 call set_fp("dfpsrp")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {\mbox{\em mcemod}}. solveopt (o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
    endif
 {%mcemod}.addassign @all
```

{%mcemod}.addinit(v=n) @all

```
' Ping simulations
%suf = " 1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suf}) "ping"
 {%mcemod}.scenario(n,a={%suf}) "ping"
, ******************
' Federal Funds Rate: RFF ping
 %ping = "rff"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rffintay_aerr = rffintay_aerr + 1
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rffintay_aerr = rffintay_aerr - 1
 call copyit
<sup>,</sup> **************************
' Treasury Term Premium: RG10P, RG5P, and RG30P ping
 %ping = "prem"
 smpl @all
 series rg30p_aerr = 0
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rg10p_aerr = rg10p_aerr + 1
 rg5p_aerr = rg5p_aerr + .75
 rg30p_aerr = rg30p_aerr + .35
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
```

```
{%varmod}.solve
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rg10p_aerr = rg10p_aerr - 1
 rg5p_aerr = rg5p_aerr - 0.75
 rg30p_aerr = rg30p_aerr - .35
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series rg10p_{%ping} = rg10p{%suf} - rg10p
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
' Federal Purchases: EGFO ping
 %ping = "eg"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 egfo_aerr = egfo_aerr + .01*xgdpn/egfon
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 egfo_aerr = egfo_aerr - .01*xgdpn/egfon
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series egfn_shr_{%ping} = 100*(egfn{%suf}/xgdpn{%suf} - egfn/xgdpn)
, ***********
' Equity Premium: REQP ping
 %ping = "reqp"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 reqp_aerr = reqp_aerr + 1
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
```

```
%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 reqp_aerr = reqp_aerr - 1
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series reqp_{%ping} = reqp{%suf} - reqp
, ***********
' Oil Prices: POILR ping
 %ping = "oil"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 poilr_aerr = poilr_aerr + 10/pxb
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 poilr_aerr = poilr_aerr - 10/pxb
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series poil_{%ping} = poil{%suf} - poil
<sup>,</sup> ************************
' Exchange Rate: FPXRR ping
 %ping = "exch"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 series shock_fpxr = log(1.1)
 fpxrr_aerr = fpxrr_aerr + shock_fpxr
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
```

else

```
%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 series fpxr_{%ping} = fpxr{%suf} - fpxr
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 fpxrr_aerr = fpxrr_aerr - shock_fpxr
 call copyit
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
' HMFPT ping
 %ping = "hmfp"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 hmfpt_aerr = hmfpt_aerr + 1
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 hmfpt_aerr = hmfpt_aerr - 1
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series hmfpt_{%ping} = hmfpt{%suf} - hmfpt
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
' MFPT ping
 %ping = "mfp"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 mfpt_aerr = mfpt_aerr + .01
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
```

```
%algstr = "meth=qnewton"
  %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
  call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
  endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 mfpt_aerr = mfpt_aerr - .01
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series mfpt_{%ping} = 100*(mfpt{%suf}/mfpt - 1)
' Individual ping graphs
call graphit
' Composite figures
if %mcevars = "none" then
  %exp = "VAR Expectations"
  endif
 if %mcevars = "mcap" then
  %exp = "MC (MCAP) Expectations"
  endif
 if %mcevars = "mcapwp" then
  %exp = "MC (MCAP+WP) Expectations"
 if %mcevars = "all" then
  %exp = "MC (ALL) Expectations"
  endif
 \%t1 = "FRB/US Ping Simulations: " + \%exp + " -- I"
 %t2 = "FRB/US Ping Simulations: " + %exp + " -- II"
 %t3 = "FRB/US Ping Simulations: " + %exp + " -- III"
' Figure 1
 graph fig_1.merge gr_rff gr_eg gr_reqp
 fig_1.align(3,.4,1.0)
 fig_1.addtext(t,just(c),font(12)) %t1
 show fig_1
```

### ' Figure 2

```
graph fig_2.merge gr_oil gr_hmfp gr_mfp
fig_2.align(3,.4,1.0)
fig_2.addtext(t,just(c),font(12)) %t2
show fig_2
```

### ' Figure 3

```
graph fig_3.merge gr_prem gr_exch
fig_3.align(3,.4,1.0)
fig_3.addtext(t,just(c),font(12)) %t3
show fig_3
```

Uses copyit 188a, graphit 189, group2zero 81a, groupnew 82, make\_frbus\_mcevars 164, mce\_load\_frbus 160, mce\_run 88, mce\_solve\_library 210 215a, pings 187d, set\_fp 84, and set\_mp 85a.

## Chapter 3

# Model Consistent Expectation Solve Package

## 3.1 example1 program

```
\langle mce\ example 1\ 41 \rangle \equiv
41
                                                      (214a)
      ' This example illustrates:
         - The automated approach to constructing the two operational
        - How to define the multiplier shock in a text
          file whose lines are executed from within the call to
          mce_run
         - How to declare the model scenario and the scenario
          scenario alias within the call to mce_run
        - The use of the "linear" option of the "newton" algorithm
           for a linear model in which the maximum endogenous lead and
           lag is one period
      ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range
       include mce_solve_library
      ' Workfile
       %wfstart = "2000q1"
       %wfend = "2100q4"
       %mainpage = "main"
       wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
```

```
' Model name
 %mod = "simple"
' Simulation range
 %simstart = "2001q1"
 %simend = "2025q4"
' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
' equations
 model {%mod}
 {\mbox{\mbox{(mod)}}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*pinf(1)+ cp(2) * ygap}
 {\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}mod}}.append rate = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)
 {\mbox{\mbox{(mod)}}}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*ygap(1) + cy(2) * (rate - pinf)
' coefficients
 coef(2) cy
 cy.fill .50, -.02
 coef(2) cp
 cp.fill .50, .02
 coef(3) cr
 cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
 smpl @all
 %vars = {%mod}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
  %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
  series \{\%tmp\} = 0
  next
' Section 3: Simulation
 text shock1
```

```
shock1.append smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
shock1.append series rate_a = rate_a + 1

%mopts = "create,mod=%mod,adds,track"
%aopts = "jinit=linear"
%sopts = "type=single,txt=shock1,scen,suf=_1"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
copy mce_sim_spool mce_sim_spool_1
show mce_sim_spool_1

series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr1.line zero rate_1 pinf_1 ygap_1
gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive interest rate shock"
show gr1
```

#### Defines:

example1, used in chunk 168. Uses mce\_run 88 and mce\_solve\_library 210 215a.

## 3.2 example2 program

```
44
    \langle mce\ example2\ 44 \rangle \equiv
                                                    (214b)
      ' This example illustrates:
         - A manual approach to constructing the two operational
          models that mimics what the automated approach does
        - How to define the multiplier shock in a text
          file whose lines are executed from within the call to
          mce_run
        - How to declare the model scenario and the scenario
          scenario alias within the call to mce_run
        - The use of the "linear" option of the "newton" algorithm
          for a linear model in which the maximum endogenous lead and
          lag is one period
      ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range
       include mce_solve_library
      ' Workfile
       %wfstart = "2000q1"
       %wfend = "2100q4"
       %mainpage = "main"
       wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
      ' Model names
       %modb = "simpleb"
       %modf = "simplef"
      ' Simulation range
       %simstart = "2001q1"
       %simend = "2025q4"
      ' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
      ' equations in backward-looking model
       model {%modb}
```

```
{\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*zpinf+ cp(2) * ygap
 {\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}modb}.append rate = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)}
 {\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*zygap + cy(2) * (rate - zpinf)
' equations in expectations errors model
 model {%modf}
 {%modf}.append ezpinf = zpinf - pinf(1)
 {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}modf}}}.append ezygap = zygap - ygap(1)
' coefficients
 coef(2) cy
 cy.fill .50, -.02
 coef(2) cp
 cp.fill .50, .02
 coef(3) cr
 cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
 smpl @all
 %vars = {%modb}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
   %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
   series \{\%tmp\} = 0
   next
 %vars = {%modf}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
   %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
   series \{\%tmp\} = 0
   next
' declare mce variables and instruments
 %instrus = "zpinf zygap"
 %errs = "ezpinf ezygap"
' Section 3: Simulation
 text shock1
 shock1.append smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 shock1.append series rate_a = rate_a + 1
```

```
%mopts = "mod_b=%modb,mod_f=%modf,mce_instrus=%instrus,mce_errs=%errs,adds,track"
%aopts = "jinit=linear"
%sopts = "type=single,txt=shock1,scen,suf=_1"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
copy mce_sim_spool mce_sim_spool_1
show mce_sim_spool_1

series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr1.line zero rate_1 pinf_1 ygap_1
gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive interest rate shock"
show gr1
```

#### Defines:

example2, used in chunk 168. Uses mce\_run 88 and mce\_solve\_library 210 215a.

## 3.3 example program

```
47
     \langle mce\ example 3\ 47 \rangle \equiv
                                                             (214c)
       ' This example illustrates:
          - Another manual approach to constructing the two operational
            models that introduces new endogenous variables for the
            expectations leads along with simple equations for the new
            endogenous variables.
          - The MCE instruments are the add factors on the equations for
            the new endogenous variables; this circumstance requires that
            add factors be assigned to the operational models prior to
            the call to mce_run.
          - The option of defining the multiplier shock in commands that
            are executed prior to the call to mce_run, when the manual
            approach is used.
          - The option of declaring model scenarios and the scenario
            scenario alias prior to the call to mce_run, when the manual
            approach is used.
          - The model no longer satisfies the conditions for which the
            "jinit=linear" option of the "newton" algorithm is designed.
            This example uses "jinit=interp(4)" to specify a
            particular approximate Jacobian.
          - This example runs three simulations. In the second and third
            simulations, the assignment of null strings to the first two
            arguments of the mce_run subroutine causes the simulations to be
            run with the same internal models and algorithm (including
            the Newton MCE Jacobian) that were created or declared in the
            first simulation.
       ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range
        include mce_solve_library
       ' Workfile
        %wfstart = "2000q1"
        %wfend = "2100q4"
        %mainpage = "main"
        wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
       ' Model names
        %modb = "simpleb"
```

```
%modf = "simplef"
' Simulation range
     %simstart = "2001q1"
     %simend = "2025q4"
' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
' equations in backward-looking model
     model {%modb}
     {\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{$($0$}}}}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*zpinf+ cp(2) * ygap
     {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}}}.append rate = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)}
     {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\mbox{\mbox{\mb
     {\modb}.append zpinf = @movav(pinf(-1),4)
     {\modb}.append zygap = @movav(ygap(-1),4)
' equations in expectations errors model
     model {%modf}
     {\modf}.append ezpinf = zpinf - pinf(1)
     {\modf}.append ezygap = zygap - ygap(1)
' coefficients
     coef(2) cy
     cy.fill .50, -.02
     coef(2) cp
     cp.fill .50, .02
     coef(3) cr
     cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
     smpl @all
    %vars = {%modb}.@varlist
     for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
          %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
          series \{\%tmp\} = 0
          next
     %vars = {%modf}.@varlist
     for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
           %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
```

```
series \{\%tmp\} = 0
' declare mce variables and instruments
 %instrus = "zpinf_a zygap_a"
 %errs = "ezpinf ezygap"
' assign tracking add factors
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%modb}.addassign @all
 {%modb}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%modf}.addassign @all
 {%modf}.addinit(v=n) @all
' Section 3: Simulations
 %sufm = "_1"
 {%modb}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"
 {%modf}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"
' Sim 1: interest rate shock
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 rate_a = rate_a + 1
 %mopts = "mod_b=%modb,mod_f=%modf,mce_instrus=%instrus,mce_errs=%errs"
 %aopts = "jinit=interp(4)"
 %sopts = "type=single"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 rate_a = rate_a - 1
 series zero = 0
 smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 graph gr1.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
 gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive interest rate shock"
 show gr1
```

' Sim 2: output gap shock

```
smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 ygap_a = ygap_a + 1
 %mopts = ""
 %aopts = ""
 %sopts = "type=single"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 ygap_a = ygap_a - 1
 series zero = 0
 smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 graph gr2.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
 gr2.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive output gap shock"
 show gr2
' Sim 3: inflation shock
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 pinf_a = pinf_a + 1
 %mopts = ""
 %aopts = ""
 %sopts = "type=single"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 pinf_a = pinf_a - 1
 series zero = 0
 smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 graph gr3.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
 gr3.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive inflation shock"
 show gr3
```

#### Defines:

example3, used in chunk 168. Uses mce\_run 88 and mce\_solve\_library 210 215a.

## 3.4 example4 program

```
51
    \langle mce\ example \not | 51 \rangle \equiv
                                                     (214d)
      ' This example illustrates:
         - The simulation of a nonlinear model (zero bound imposed)
           (because the baseline data is set to zero; the zero-bound
           is set illustratively to -1)
         - The use of the qnewton algorithm
      ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range
       include mce_solve_library
      ' Workfile
       %wfstart = "2000q1"
       %wfend = "2100q4"
       %mainpage = "main"
       wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
      ' Model names
       %modb = "simpleb"
       %modf = "simplef"
      ' Simulation range
       %simstart = "2001q1"
       %simend = "2025q4"
      ' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
      ' equations in backward-looking model
       model {%modb}
       {\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*zpinf+ cp(2) * ygap
       {\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}.append rate_u = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)}
       {\modb}.append rate = @recode( rate_u>rate_min,rate_u,rate_min)
       {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}}}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*zygap + cy(2) * (rate - zpinf)}
       {\modb}.append zpinf = @movav(pinf(-1),4)
       {\modb}.append zygap = @movav(ygap(-1),4)
```

```
' equations in expectations errors model
 model {%modf}
 {\modf}.append ezpinf = zpinf - pinf(1)
 {\modf}.append ezygap = zygap - ygap(1)
' coefficients
 coef(2) cy
 cy.fill .50, -.02
 coef(2) cp
 cp.fill .50, .02
 coef(3) cr
 cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
 smpl @all
 %vars = {%modb}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
  %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
  series \{\%tmp\} = 0
 %vars = {%modf}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
  %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
  series \{\%tmp\} = 0
  next
' declare mce variables and instruments
 %instrus = "zpinf_a zygap_a"
 %errs = "ezpinf ezygap"
' assign tracking add factors
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%modb}.addassign @all
 {%modb}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%modf}.addassign @all
 {%modf}.addinit(v=n) @all
' Section 3: Simulation
 %zb = "yes"
```

```
%sufm = "_1"
{%modb}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"
{%modf}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"
if %zb = "yes" then
 smpl @all
 rate_min = -1
 else
 rate_min = -9999
  endif
smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
ygap_a = ygap_a - 5
%mopts = "mod_b=%modb,mod_f=%modf,mce_instrus=%instrus,mce_errs=%errs"
%aopts = "meth=qnewton"
%sopts = "type=single"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
scalar elapsed = @toc
show elapsed
series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
\verb|graph gr1.line zero rate{%sufm}| pinf{%sufm}| ygap{%sufm}|
%title = "Negative Output Shock"
if %zb = "yes" then
 %title = %title + "\r(zero bound imposed)"
  %title = %title + "\r(zero bound not imposed)"
  endif
gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) %title
show gr1
```

#### Defines:

example4, used in chunk 168. Uses mce\_run 88 and mce\_solve\_library 210 215a.

## 3.5 example5 program

```
54
    \langle mce\ example 5\ 54 \rangle \equiv
                                                        (214e)
      ' This example illustrates the two optimal policy simulation types
         - Simulate the effects of a positive shock to the output gap
           using sequentially
           (a) the model's interest rate rule
           (b) the opt simulation type to find the optimal interest rate
           path under commitment
           (c) the opttc simulation type to find the optimal time-consistent
           or discretionary interest rate path; note that the solution in
           this case is only approximate
           In both (b) and (c) the policy instrument is the residual of
           the interest rule
         - The illustrative loss function penalizes equally weighted,
           discounted, squared deviations of the output gap,
           inflation, and the first difference of the interest rate.
      ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range
        include mce_solve_library
      ' Workfile
        %wfstart = "2000q1"
       %wfend = "2100q4"
        %mainpage = "main"
        wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
      ' Model name
        %mod = "simple"
      ' Simulation range
        %simstart = "2001q1"
       %simend = "2025q4"
```

' loss function weights

```
' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
' equations
 model {%mod}
 {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}mod}}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*pinf(1)+ cp(2) * ygap}
 {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}mod}}.append rate - rate\_aerr = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)}
 {\mbox{\mbox{(mod)}}}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*ygap(1) + cy(2) * (rate - pinf(1))
 {\mod}.append drate = rate - rate(-1)
, coefficients
 coef(2) cy
 cy.fill .50, -.02
 coef(2) cp
 cp.fill .50, .02
 coef(3) cr
 cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
 smpl @all
 %vars = {%mod}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
  %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
  series \{\%tmp\} = 0
  next
' Section 3: Optimal policy setup
' targets, instruments
 group opt_instrus rate_aerr
 group opt_targs pinf ygap drate
' desired target trajectories
 smpl @all
 series pinf_t = 0
 series ygap_t = 0
 series drate_t = 0
```

```
%discount = ".99"
 %y_weight = "1.0"
 %p_weight = "1.0"
 %r_{weight} = "1.0"
 smpl @all
 series ygap_w = @val(%y_weight)
 series pinf_w = @val(%p_weight)
 series drate_w = @val(%r_weight)
 !discount = @val(%discount)
 smpl %simstart+1 %simend
 ygap_w = !discount * ygap_w(-1)
 pinf_w = !discount * pinf_w(-1)
 drate_w = !discount * drate_w(-1)
' Section 3: Simulations
 text shock1
 shock1.append smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 shock1.append series ygap_a = ygap_a + 3
' run the simulation using the monetary policy rule
 %mopts = "create,mod=%mod,adds,track"
 %aopts = "jinit=linear"
 %sopts = "type= single,txt=shock1,scen,suf=_1"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
 smpl @all
 series rate_rule = rate_1
 series pinf_rule = pinf_1
 series ygap_rule = ygap_1
' run the simulation using opt
 %mopts = ""
 %aopts = ""
 %sopts = "type=opt,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
```

```
smpl @all
    series rate_opt = rate_1
    series pinf_opt = pinf_1
    series ygap_opt = ygap_1
  ' run the simulation using opttc
    %mopts = ""
    %aopts = ""
    %sopts = "type=opttc,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
    smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
    call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
    smpl @all
    series rate_opttc = rate_1
    series pinf_opttc = pinf_1
    series ygap_opttc = ygap_1
  'graph
    smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
    series zero = 0
    graph gr1.line zero rate_rule rate_opt rate_opttc
    graph gr2.line zero pinf_rule pinf_opt pinf_opttc
    graph gr3.line zero ygap_rule ygap_opt ygap_opttc
    graph gr4.merge gr1 gr2 gr3
    %title = "Effects of Positive Output Shock Under Three Policy Responses"
    %title = %title + "\r1. An intertial interest rate rule (_rule)"
    %title = %title + "\r2. Optimal policy under committment (_opt)"
    %title = %title + "\r3. Optimal time-consistent policy (_opttc)"
    gr4.addtext(t,c,font(14)) %title
    show gr4
Defines:
 example5, used in chunk 168.
Uses mce_run 88 and mce_solve_library 210 215a.
```

## Chapter 4

## State Space Package

### 4.1 Estimate Model

```
\langle estimation \ model \ 59 \rangle \equiv
                                                                 (215d)
  ' Program to estimate the FRB/US state-space model and
  ' generate estimates of model states.
  ' Subroutines:
       To transform data
  include "./data_transformations"
       To estimate the model
  include "./estimation_code"
 include "./initial_values"
 close @all
 wfcreate kf_data q 1949:1 2020:4
 %estend = "2013q4"
 %eststart = "1963q2"
  %datastart = "1949q1"
 sample estsample %eststart %estend
 sample datasample %datastart %estend
 %datasmpl = %datastart + " " + %estend
 %modname = "ss_model"
```

```
' Retrieve variables from the database
' Definitions of series in database
    See FRB/US model documentation for more complete descriptions
, XGDP - GDP, cw 2009$
, XGDPN - GDP
'XB - BLS Business output, 2009$
' XBN - BLS Business output
, XGDIN - GDI
' PGDP - Price index for GDP, cw
' PXB - BLS Business price
, LEP
        - Employment in business sector (employee and self-employed)
, LHP
        - Aggregate labor hours, business sector (employee and self-employed)
, LUR
        - Civilian unemployment rate (break adjusted)
, LF
       - Civilian labor force (break adjusted)
'N16
       - Noninstitutional population, aged 16 and over (break adjusted)
, KS
        - Capital services, 2009 $
' LQUALT - Labor quality, trend level
, VEOA
       - Average energy-output ratio of existing capital stock
' PCXFE - Price index for personal consumption expendits ex. food and energy, cw (N
' PCER - Price index for personal consumption expenditures on energy (relative to
, bwo
        - Price index for imports ex. petroleum, cw
' UCES - Energy share of nominal consumption expenditures
' {\tt EMON}~-~{\tt Imports} of goods and services ex. petroleum
' XGDEN - Nominal Absorption
, PTR
        - 10-year expected inflation (Hoey/Philadelphia survey)
%dbin = "state_space_data"
dbopen %dbin as dbin
string varlist = " xgdpn xbn pgdp pxb pcxfe pcer xgdp xb lep uces emon xgden ptr "
varlist = varlist + " ks lqualt veoa lhp lur lf n16 pmo xgdin "
fetch(d=dbin) {varlist}
```

```
' Make model observable series, set priors
smpl datasample
call data_transformations
' Specify and estimate model, save for re-use
smpl estsample
statusline Estimating model
call ss_estimation
{%modname}.makefilter saved_results
' Create states
{%modname}.makestates(t=smoothse) *se2
                                    ' RMSE of the smoothed states
\label{lem:continuous} $$ {\modname}.makesignals(t=pred) *_pr $$ ' one-step ahead signal predictions $$ {\modname}.makesignals(t=resid) *_res $$ ' error in one-step ahead signal predictions $$
{\modname}.makesignals(t=stdresid) *_sres ' standardized one-step ahead prediction residual
'Transformation into FRB/US mnemonics
series xbt = \exp((tmfp_2/.965 + 0.725*(terate_2 + tlfpr_2 + thtfactor_2 + tww_2) + _
              0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa +lpop)/100)
series hmfpt = gtmfp_2
series qlfpr = exp(tlfpr_2/100)
series hqlfpr = (gtlfpr_2/400)*qlfpr(-1)
series hqlww = gtww_2
series huxb = gtotfactor_2
series leppot = exp((tlfpr_2+terate_2+thtfactor_2)/100) * n16
series lurnat = 100*(1-exp(terate_2/100))
series qlww = exp(tww_2/100)
```

```
series uxbt = exp(totfactor_2/100)
series xgdpt = xbt * uxbt
series xgdo = exp(cycle_2/100)*xgdpt
```

wfsave saved\_results\_new

#### Defines:

frbus\_supply\_estimation, used in chunk 168.
saved\_results\_new, never used.
Uses data\_transformations 63, estimation\_code 66, initial\_values 73, and ss\_estimation 66.

## 4.2 Data Transformations

```
\langle data \ transformations \ 63 \rangle \equiv
63
                                                                      (215b)
        subroutine data_transformations()
        ' Subroutine for FRB/US state-space model package to
        ' transform raw data from EViews database to observables
        ' used in the estimation of the state-space model.
        ' 1. Data transformations
        series lpop = 100*log(n16)
        'Business - product side
        series nbp = xbn
        series bp = log(xb)*100 - lpop
        'GDP
        series gdp = log(xgdp)*100 - lpop
        'Buseness - income side
        series dsnst_q = xgdpn - xgdin
        series nbi = nbp - dsnst_q
        series rbi = nbi/(pxb/100)
        series bi = log(rbi)*100 - lpop
        ' Employment Business sector
        series eb = log(lep)*100 - lpop
        ' Workweek
        series hb = log(lhp)*100 - lpop
        series bww = hb - eb
        ' Employment Rate
        series erate = 100*log((100-lur)/100)
        ' Participation Rate
        series lfpr = 100*log(lf/n16)
        ' Variables for TMFP:
        series lks = 100*log(ks) - lpop
        series llqualt = 100*log(lqualt)
        series lveoa = 100*log(veoa)
        ' Series for the price equation
        series c1pcex = @pca(pcxfe)
```

series engylag\_pcex = 0.5\*(uces(-1)+uces(-2))\*@pca(pcer(-1))

```
series \ sw\_coreimp\_pcex = 0.5*((emon/xgden)+(emon(-1)/xgden(-1)))*@pca(pmo/pcxfe)
series dum84 = @year>=1985
                    ''' Nixon wage-price control programs
series frzbulg = 0
smpl 1971q3 1974q1
frzbulg = 1
smpl 1974q2 1974q4
frzbulg = -3.666
' For the output-sector ratio, we use the median unbiased approach of Stock
' and Watson (1998). Thus, tau_oti is the ratio of the variances of the level
' and drift shocks.
scalar tau_oti = .033260 ' modifier for the drift totfactor (OSR*) error term
' 2. Prior starting values for states.
     For mean zero level states, set prior to zero.
     For other level states, set prior to a data-based
         value near the start of the sample.
    For most drift terms, set prior to zero.
         Exception is trend MFP, set equal to sample average.
' Cycle
           icycle =
scalar
          icycle1 =
scalar
                          0
scalar
          icycle2 =
' Measurement error
scalar
          ie3p =
                          0
scalar
          ie3i =
' Levels of trends
                                @elem(gdp, %eststart) - @elem(bp, %eststart)
scalar
         itotfactor =
                               .965*(@elem(bp, %eststart) - 0.725*(@elem(eb, %eststart)
scalar
          itmfp =
                                   + @elem(bww, %eststart)) - 0.275*@elem(lks, %eststart)
                                   - 0.725*@elem(llqualt, %eststart) _
                                   - (.035/.965)*@elem(lveoa, %eststart))
scalar
                                @elem(bww, %eststart)
          itww =
                                @elem(eb, %eststart) - @elem(erate, %eststart) _
scalar
          ithtfactor =
                                - @elem(lfpr, %eststart)
```

```
scalar
          itlfpr =
                                @elem(lfpr,%eststart)
 scalar
          iterate =
                                @elem(erate, %eststart)
 ' Initial drift terms
 scalar igtotfactor =
                                0.0
 scalar igtmfp =
scalar igtww =
                                1.7
                                0.0
 scalar igthtfactor = scalar igtlfpr =
                               0.0
                                0.0
 scalar nstate = 25
  ' The mpriors *must* be in the same order as the states are in the model object
 vector(nstate) mpriors
                0, ie3p, ie3i, 0, 0, _
 mpriors.fill
                0, 0, icycle, icycle1, icycle2, _
                itotfactor, igtotfactor, itmfp, igtmfp, itww, _
                itww, igtww, ithtfactor, ithtfactor, igthtfactor, _
                itlfpr, itlfpr, igtlfpr, iterate, iterate
 ' Set starting values for variance priors
       Variance priors set at a high value. In estimation, variance
       drops sharply in early periods of estimation sample.
 sym(nstate) vpriors
 for !d = 1 to nstate
    vpriors(!d, !d) = 3
  ' A tighter prior for drift variances,
 vpriors(14,14) = 1 ' igtmfp
 vpriors(20,20) = 1 'igthtfactor
 endsub
Defines:
 data_transformations, used in chunks 59, 70, and 168.
```

#### 4.3 Estimation Code

```
66
     \langle estimation \ code \ 66 \rangle \equiv
                                                               (215c)
       subroutine ss_estimation()
       ' Subroutine for FRB/US state-space model package to
       ' estimate the model parameters.
       ' 1. Starting values for parameters.
       ' All of the coefficients in equations appear as beta or phi.
       ' Note that some values that are set here are hard coded in the estimation code below
       call initial_values
       ' Model
       sspace {%modname} 'Declare a new state-space model object
       ' 2. Output equations.
       ' In the output equations, trend output is related to the capital stock, energy inter
       ' and trends for labor input using a production function. The parameters of the production
       ' function are hard-coded to the values in the FRB/US model.
       ' GDP observable
       {\modname}.append @signal gdp = totfactor + tmfp/.965 + 0.725*(terate + tlfpr + thtfactor)
                                   + 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa _
                                   + cycle + beta(11)*beta(6) + beta(11)*e3p + rexo
       {\modname}.append @state rexo = [var=0.0000001^2]
       ' Buisines sector product-side observable
       {\modname}.append @signal bp = tmfp/.965 + 0.725*(terate + tlfpr + thtfactor + tww)
                                   + 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa _
                                   + beta(10)*cycle + beta(6) + e3p
       {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}modname}}}.append @state e3p = beta(602)*e3p(-1) + re3p
       {%modname}.append @ename re3p 'business prod error
       {\modname}.append @evar var(re3p) = (beta(125)^2)
       ' Business sector income-side observable
       {\modname}.append @signal bi = tmfp/.965 + 0.725*(terate + tlfpr + thtfactor + tw
                                   + 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa _
                                   + beta(10)*cycle - beta(6) + e3i
```

```
{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc M}}}}}.append @state e3i = beta(602)*e3i(-1) + re3i
{%modname}.append @ename re3i 'business income error
{\( \)modname\\ \).append @evar var(re3i) = (beta(126)^2)
' 3. Labor equations.
' Workweek observable
' To make this equation more consistent with the FRB/US workweek specification,
' a contemporaneous change in the cycle is included as well as the level of the
' cycle. In addition, the coefficient on the lagged gap term in this equation is
' hard-coded at a value similar to that implicit in the FRB/US model.
{%modname}.append @signal bww = tww _
             + phi(20)*(cycle-cycle1) _
             + phi(22)*cycle1 _
             + 0.82*(bww(-1)-tww1) _
             + eww
{\modname}.append @state eww = [var=beta(104)^2]
' Employment observable
{%modname}.append @signal eb = terate + tlfpr + thtfactor + _
             + phi(30)*cycle _
             + phi(31)*(eb(-1)-(terate1 + tlfpr1 +thtfactor1)) _
             + eeb
{\modname}.append @state eeb = [var=beta(105)^2]
' Employment rate observable
{%modname}.append @signal erate = terate + phi(50)*cycle _
                     + phi(51)*(erate(-1)-terate1) _
                     + eerate
{%modname}.append @state eerate = [var=beta(106)^2]
' Labor force participation observable
{\modname}.append @signal lfpr = tlfpr + phi(40)*cycle _
                     + phi(41)*(lfpr(-1)-tlfpr1) _
                     + elfpr
{\modname}.append @state elfpr = [var=beta(107)^2]
' 4. Price observable
        {%modname}.append @ename ec
        {\modname}.append @evar var(ec) = (beta(109)^2)
          {%modname}.append @signal c1pcex = _
          beta(401)*c1pcex(-1) + (1-beta(401))*(ptr(-1)+.1) _
        + beta(404)*(((.50*cycle + .33*cycle1 + .17*cycle2 )) ) _
                + beta(405)*@movav(engylag_pcex(-1),6) _
                + beta(406)*@movav(dum84*engylag_pcex(-1),6) _
```

```
+ beta(407)*frzbulg _
        + beta(408)*sw_coreimp_pcex + beta(409)*sw_coreimp_pcex(-1) _
        + ec
' 5. State equations
' Cycle state
{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{$\%$}}}}append {\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{$\%$}}}} = beta(1)*cycle(-1) + beta(2)*cycle1(-1) + ecycle
{%modname}.append @state cycle1 = cycle(-1)
{\modname}.append @state cycle2 = cycle1(-1)
{%modname}.append @ename ecycle
{%modname}.append @evar var(ecycle) = (beta(111)^2)
' Trends
' Totfactor = OSR* in F.R.(2011)
' tau_oti is taken from FR(2011)
{\mbox{\sc (\frac{1}{1})}} + 0.25 \times .95 \times ({\mbox{\sc gtotfactor}(-1)}) + 0.5
                                       etotfactor + 0.25*egtotfactor
{\modname}.append @state gtotfactor = .95*gtotfactor(-1) + .05*beta(213) + egtotfactor
{%modname}.append @ename etotfactor
{\modname}.append @evar var(etotfactor) = (beta(112)^2)
{%modname}.append @ename egtotfactor
{\modname}.append @evar var(egtotfactor) = (4*((tau_oti))*beta(112))^2
' Multi-Factor Productivity (OPH*)
{\mbox{\color{modname}}}.append {\mbox{\color{color{modname}}}}. append {\mbox{\color{color{color{modname}}}} + 0.25*.95*(gtmfp(-1)) + 0.25*0.05
{\mbox{\sc (Mmodname)}}.append @state gtmfp = 0.95*gtmfp(-1) + 0.05*beta(214) + egtmfp
{%modname}.append @ename etmfp
{%modname}.append @evar var(etmfp) = beta(114)^2
{%modname}.append @ename egtmfp
{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}modname}}}.append {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$@$}evar} var(egtmfp) = 0.14^2} , beta(115)^2
      For the workweek, employment-sector ratio, and LFPR, the level variances are has
      This hard-coding is done for convenience in production work. In particular, the
      values are close to the values these parameters take on when they are freely ear
      However, the t-ratios for these parameters are not very high, and that impreci:
      to sluggish convergence; imposing these values shortens the time needed for es-
, Workweek (WW*)
{\mbox{\sc wmodname}}.append {\mbox{\sc wt}} = tww (-1) + 0.25*.95*(gtww(-1)) + etww + 0.25*.05*beta
{%modname}.append @state tww1 = tww(-1)
{%modname}.append @ename etww
{%modname}.append @ename egtww
{\modname}.append @evar var(etww) = 0.1^2
```

```
{%modname}.append @evar var(egtww) = beta(117)^2
     ' Employment Sector Ratio (ESR*)
     {\mbox{\colored} {\colored} {\mbox{\colored} {\mbox{\co
                                                                                                  0.25*egthtfactor + ethtfactor
     {%modname}.append @state thtfactor1 = thtfactor(-1)
     {\( \)modname\).append @state gthtfactor = 0.95*gthtfactor(-1) + egthtfactor
     {%modname}.append @ename ethtfactor
     {\mbox{\em Modname}}.append @evar var(ethtfactor) = .01^2 , beta(118)^2
     {%modname}.append @ename egthtfactor
     {%modname}.append @evar var(egthtfactor) = (beta(119)^2)
     ' Labor Force Participation (LFPR*)
     {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}}}}append @state tlfpr = tlfpr(-1) + 0.25*(.95*gtlfpr(-1) + egtlfpr) + etlfpr
     {\modname}.append @state tlfpr1 = tlfpr(-1)
     {%modname}.append @state gtlfpr = 0.95*gtlfpr(-1) + egtlfpr
     {%modname}.append @ename etlfpr
     {\mbox{\em Modname}}.append @evar var(etlfpr) = .05^2 ' beta(122)^2
     {%modname}.append @ename egtlfpr
     {\modname}.append @evar var(egtlfpr) = beta(123)^2
     ' Employment Rate (ER*), no drift
     {%modname}.append @state terate = terate(-1) + eterate
     {\modname}.append @state terate1 = terate(-1)
     {%modname}.append @ename eterate
     {%modname}.append @evar var(eterate) = beta(124)^2
     {%modname}.append @vprior vpriors
     {%modname}.append @mprior mpriors
     freeze({%modname}_results) {%modname}.ml(m=100,showopts)
     endsub
Defines:
     estimation_code, used in chunks 59 and 168.
     ss_estimation, used in chunk 59.
Uses initial_values 73.
```

# 4.4 Supply Filter

```
70
     \langle supply \ filter \ 70 \rangle \equiv
                                                                (215e)
       ' Program is part of the FRB/US state-space model package.
       ' frbus_supply_filter takes a previously estimated state-space model and
       ' generates estimates of model states.
       ' Subroutines:
           To transform data
       include "./data_transformations"
       close @all
       wfcreate kf_data q 1949:1 2020:4
       %estend
                 = "2014q3"
       %eststart = "1963q2"
       %datastart = "1949q1"
       sample estsample %eststart %estend
       sample datasample %datastart %estend
       %modname = "ss_model"
       ' Retrieve variables from the database
       ' Definitions of series in database
            See FRB/US model documentation for more complete descriptions
       ' XGDP - GDP, cw 2009$
       , XGDPN - GDP
       ' XB - BLS NFB output, 2009$
       ' XBN - BLS NFB output
       , XGDIN - GDI
       , PGDP
              - Price index for GDP, cw
       ' PXB - BLS NFB price
       , LEP
               - Employment in nonfarm business sector (employee and self-employed)
               - Aggregate labor hours, nonfarm business sector (employee and self-employee
       , LHD
       , LUR
               - Civilian unemployment rate (break adjusted)
       , LF
               - Civilian labor force (break adjusted)
               - Noninstitutional population, aged 16 and over (break adjusted)
       'N16
```

```
- Capital services, 2009 $
' LQUALT - Labor quality, trend level
' VEOA - Average energy-output ratio of existing capital stock
' PCXFE - Price index for personal consumption expendits ex. food and energy, cw (NIA def.)
' PCER - Price index for personal consumption expenditures on energy (relative to PCXFE)
, bwo
         - Price index for imports ex. petroleum, cw
, UCES
         - Energy share of nominal consumption expenditures
' EMON - Imports of goods and services ex. petroleum
' XGDEN - Nominal Absorption
         - 10-year expected inflation (Hoey/Philadelphia survey)
' PTR
smpl datasample
%dbin = "./state_space_data"
dbopen %dbin as histdata
fetch(d=histdata) *
' Make model observable series, set priors
smpl datasample
call data_transformations
' Load saved model; run estimation step with previously estimated
' parameters as starting values (converges quickly).
smpl estsample
wfopen saved_results
copy saved_results::untitled\saved_results kf_data::untitled\{\modname}
wfclose saved_results
freeze({%modname}_results) {%modname}.ml(m=100,showopts)
' Create states
{\modname}.makestates(t=pred) *_prs ' one-step ahead state predictions
\label{lem:continuous} $\{\mbox{\em modname}\}.\mbox{\em makestates}(t=filt) *_1 & \mbox{\em filter states} \\ \mbox{\em modname}\}.\mbox{\em makestates}(t=smooth) *_2 & \mbox{\em smoothed states} \\ \mbox{\em modname}\}.\mbox{\em makestates}(t=disturb) *=r & \mbox{\em estimate of the disturbances} \\ \mbox{\em modname}\}.
                                           ' filter states
```

```
{%modname}.makestates(t=filtse) *se
                                         ' RMSE of the filtered states
{%modname}.makestates(t=smoothse) *se2
                                         ' RMSE of the smoothed states
{%modname}.makesignals(t=pred) *_pr
                                         ' one-step ahead signal predictions
{\( \text{modname} \) . makesignals(t=resid) *_res \( \text{' error in one-step ahead signal prediction} \)
{\( \text{modname} \) . makesignals(t=stdresid) *_sres 'standardized one-step ahead prediction :
' Transformation into FRB/US mnemonics
series xbt = \exp((tmfp_2/.965 + 0.725*(terate_2 + tlfpr_2 + thtfactor_2 + tww_2) +
               0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa +lpop)/100)
series hmfpt = gtmfp_2
series qlfpr = exp(tlfpr_2/100)
series hqlfpr = (gtlfpr_2/400)*qlfpr(-1)
series hqlww = gtww_2
series huxb = gtotfactor_2
series leppot = exp((tlfpr_2+terate_2+thtfactor_2)/100) * n16
series lurnat = 100*(1-exp(terate_2/100))
series qlww = exp(tww_2/100)
series uxbt = exp(totfactor_2/100)
series xgdpt = xbt * uxbt
series xgdo = exp(cycle_2/100)*xgdpt
```

#### Defines:

frbus.supply.filter, used in chunk 168. Uses data\_transformations 63.

#### 4.5 Initial Values

73  $\langle initial\ values\ 73 \rangle \equiv$  (215f) subroutine initial\_values

coef(703) beta coef(60) phi beta(1) = 1.497516beta(2) = -0.540927beta(213) = -0.328852beta(214) = 1.061453beta(216) = -0.266658beta(10) = 1.325310beta(401) = 0.625693 beta(404) = 0.090059beta(405) = 0.440360beta(406) = -0.324208= -0.435237beta(407) beta(408) = 0.293555beta(409) = 0.253904beta(6) = 0.331366beta(602) = 0.927692phi(20) = 0.301616phi(22) = 0.020651= 0.452297phi(30) phi(31) = 0.649965phi(40) = 0.042475phi(41) = 0.727876= 0.299981phi(50) phi(51) = 0.528947beta(105) = 0.176896= 0.086226 beta(106) beta(107) = 0.210419beta(104) = 0.229143beta(100) = 0.000001 beta(109) = 0.803236beta(111) = 0.566205beta(119) = 0.099423beta(123) = 0.129325beta(115) = 0.140001= 0.081062 beta(117) beta(124) = 0.136532= 0.010000 beta(118)

#### 74 frbuseview.nw

June 19, 2016

beta(122) = 0.050000 beta(114) = 0.107852 beta(112) = 0.044151 beta(126) = 0.476765 beta(125) = 0.534807 beta(11) = 1/beta(10)

#### endsub

#### Defines:

 $initial\_values$ , used in chunks 59, 66, and 168.

Chapter 5

Data Only Package

Chapter 6

Appendices

# Routine Libraries

# 6.1 Master Library

# 6.1.1 quarterly date string shift

#### 6.1.2 copy series into group

```
80
      \langle copy \ series \ into \ group \ 80 \rangle \equiv
                                                                      (209b)
        subroutine group2group(string %fromgroup, string %togroup, string %to_type)
        ' copies a group of series into another group.
        ' If %to_type = "suffix", then %togroup is interpreted as a suffix to be applied to
        ' %fromgroup and its series.
        ' If %to_type = "prefix", then %togroup is interpreted as a prefix to be applied to
        ' %fromgroup and its series.
        ' If %to_type = "group", the %togroup is interpreted as the name of a group that
        ' already exists.
          if %to_type = "group" then
            if {%fromgroup}.@count <> {%togroup}.@count then
              statusline ERROR in GROUP2GROUP: the two groups do not contain the same number
            for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
              %tmp = {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1)
              %tmp1 = {%togroup}.@seriesname(!ik1)
              {\text{mp1}} = {\text{mp}}
              next
            endif
          if %to_type = "suffix" then
            %tmpa = " "
            %tmpb = %fromgroup + %togroup
            for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
              %tmp = {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1) + %togroup
              %tmpa = %tmpa + " " + %tmp
              if @isobject(%tmp) then
                {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
                series {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
                endif
              next
            group {%tmpb} {%tmpa}
            endif
          if %to_type = "prefix" then
            %tmpa = " "
            %tmpb = %togroup + %fromgroup
            for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
```

```
%tmp = %togroup + {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1)
                %tmpa = %tmpa + " " + %tmp
                if @isobject(%tmp) then
                   {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
                  series {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
                  endif
                next
              group {%tmpb} {%tmpa}
              endif
         endsub
       Defines:
         group2group, never used.
       6.1.3 set group to zero
81a
       ⟨set group to zero 81a⟩≡
                                                                             (209b)
         subroutine group2zero(string %group)
          ' set all series in an existin %group to zero
           for !ik1 = 1 to {%group}.@count
              %tmp = {%group}.@seriesname(!ik1)
              {\text{\{}}\text{\footnote{tmp}} = 0
              next
         endsub
       Defines:
         group2zero, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 194, and 198.
       6.1.4 names of all series in group
       \langle names \ of \ all \ series \ in \ group \ 81b \rangle \equiv
81b
         subroutine groupnames2string(string %group, string %groupnames)
          ' creates a string of the names of all the series in a group
           %groupnames = " "
           for !ik1 = 1 to {%group}.@count
              %groupnames = %groupnames + " " + {%group}.@seriesname(!ik1)
         endsub
       Defines:
         groupnames2string, used in chunk 198.
```

#### 6.1.5 create new group

group {%tmpb} {%tmpa}

```
% (create new group 82) = (209b)
% subroutine groupnew(string %fromgroup, string %to)

' Creates a new group. The names of the new group and associated series are built up
' from %fromgroup with %to as a suffix. Series that do not yet exist are set to zero

%tmpa = " "
%tmpb = %fromgroup + %to
for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
%tmp = {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1) + %to
%tmpa = %tmpa + " " + %tmp
if @isobject(%tmp) <> 1 then
series {%tmp} = 0
endif
```

endsub

Defines:

groupnew, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 194, and 198.

#### 6.1.6 interpolate unavailable observations

smpl %substart %subend if (tmp\_next = NA)

```
83
     \langle interpolate\ unavailable\ observations\ 83 \rangle \equiv
                                                                (209b)
       subroutine interp_lin(string %series_in, string %series_out, string %substart, string %subend)
       ' Subroutine that replaces NA values in a series with
       ' interpolated observations. NA values at the beginning or end of the series are
       ' replaced with the first or last non-NA value.
         smpl %substart %subend
         ' check that series is not all NAs
         series tmp_check = ({%series_in} = NA)
         if @sum(tmp_check) = @obssmpl then
           statusline Error in interp_lin subroutine: interpolation cannot be performed because serie
           stop
           endif
         series tmp_ser = ({%series_in}<>NA)
         series tmp_id = @cumsum(tmp_ser)
         series tmp_next = @sumsby({%series_in},tmp_id(-1))
         series tmp_prev = @sumsby({%series_in},tmp_id)
         ' check for NAs at either beginning or end of sample
         ' test for NAs at beginning of sample
         series tmp_naprev = (tmp_prev = NA)
         !flag_prev = @max(tmp_naprev)
         if !flag_prev = 1 then
           'at this point, tmp_next will have an undesired NA in its first observation;
           'change it to equal its second observation
           smpl %substart %substart
           call dateshift(%substart, %nextqtr,1)
           tmp_next = @elem(tmp_next, %nextqtr)
           smpl %substart %subend if (tmp_prev = NA)
           tmp_prev = tmp_next
           smpl %substart %subend
           endif
         ' test for NAs at end of sample
         series tmp_nanext = (tmp_next = NA)
         !flag_next = @max(tmp_nanext)
         if !flag_next = 1 then
```

```
84
                                                             June 19, 2016
           frbuseview.nw
           tmp_next = tmp_prev
            smpl %substart %subend
            endif
          series tmp_lambda = (@obsid-@minsby(@obsid,tmp_id))/@sumsby(1,tmp_id)
         series {%series_out} = tmp_lambda*tmp_next + (1-tmp_lambda)*tmp_prev
         delete tmp_ser tmp_prev tmp_next tmp_lambda tmp_id tmp_nanext tmp_naprev tmp_check
       endsub
     Defines:
       interp_lin, used in chunk 198.
     Uses dateshift 79.
     6.1.7 set fiscal policy option
     \langle set \ fiscal \ policy \ option \ 84 \rangle \equiv
84
                                                                    (209b)
       subroutine set_fp(string dfpxxx)
         %policy_options = "dfpex dfpsrp dfpdbt"
         %dfpxxx = @lower(dfpxxx)
         %dfpxxx = @replace(%dfpxxx," ","")
         !kz = @wfind(%policy_options,%dfpxxx)
         if !kz > 0 then
           for !izzz = 1 to @wcount(%policy_options)
             %ppp = @word(%policy_options,!izzz)
             if !izzz = !kz then
               series {\%ppp} = 1
               else
               series \{\%ppp\} = 0
               endif
             next
            else
           %err = %dfpxxx + " is not a valid fiscal policy option; execution terminated"
            @uiprompt(%err)
            stop
            endif
       endsub
```

Defines:

set\_fp, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, and 198.

#### 6.1.8 set monetary policy option

Defines:

 ${\tt set\_mpvars2rff}, \ {\rm never} \ {\rm used}.$ 

```
\langle set \ monetary \ policy \ option \ 85a \rangle \equiv
85a
                                                                          (209b)
         subroutine set_mp(string dmpxxx)
           %policy_options = "dmpex dmprr dmptay dmptlr dmpintay dmpalt dmpgen"
           %dmpxxx = @lower(dmpxxx)
           %dmpxxx = @replace(%dmpxxx," ","")
           !kz = @wfind(%policy_options,%dmpxxx)
           if !kz > 0 then
             for !izzz = 1 to @wcount(%policy_options)
               %ppp = @word(%policy_options,!izzz)
               if !izzz = !kz then
                 series {%ppp} = 1
                 else
                 series \{\%ppp\} = 0
                  endif
               next
             else
             %err = %dmpxxx + " is not a valid monetary policy option; execution terminated"
             @uiprompt(%err)
             stop
             endif
         endsub
       Defines:
         set_mp, used in chunks 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, and 198.
               set monetary policy fed funds rate
       ⟨set monetary policy fed funds rate 85b⟩≡
85b
                                                                          (209b)
         subroutine set_mpvars2rff
           rfffix = rff
           rfftay = rffe
           rfftlr = rffe
           rffalt = rff
           rffintay = rffe
           rffgen = rffe
           rrfix = rffe - @movav(picxfe,4)
         endsub
```

# 6.2 mce solve library

### 6.2.1 mce solve library change history

```
\langle mce \ solve \ library \ change \ history \ 86 \rangle \equiv
86
                                                                      (211)
        ' Changes (1/25/14)
        ' 1. Removed defaults from mce_load_frbus subroutine
        ' 2. Added make_frbus_mcevars subroutine
         Changes (1/22/14)
        ' 1. Added code so that the _$_sufsim string variable is assigned the
              alias of the currently active scenario when the %mopts argument
              is a null string.
        ' 2. In subroutine mcz_sim, put the contents of string variable
             mcz_sim_options into another string, a change which for unknown
              reasons eliminates an unexplanined Eviews shutdown when running
              a pair of simulations of which the first is type=single and the
              second is type=opt.
        ' Changes (1/8/14)
         1. Added the "dontstop" option to the %sopt argument. When invoked,
              this option causes the eviews program that calls mce_run
              to continue executing when running a type=single simulation if
              (a) the solution iterations do not
              converge within the maximum number of permitted iterations or
              (b) the eviews solver generates an error when solving either
              the backward-looking or forward-looking models in subroutine
             mcz_solvit. In the case of nonconvergence the call to mce_run
              terminates with the string value %mce_finish = "no". In the
              case of a solver error, the call to mce_run terminates with the
              string value %mce_finish = "failed_solve". Otherwise,
              %mce_finish = "yes".
        ' Changes (2/21/12)
        ' 1. Fixed problem with code for unconstrained TC policy
             calculated via EViews matrices -- the solution at period t
             (t = 1, ... !ndrv) must go out through period
             the farthest period ever solved -- (!nevl + !ndrv - 1) --
             which requires that the opt derivative
```

```
matrix must span this many quarters. The constrained TC
  ' 2. Wrote code for constrained TC policy in EViews when there is
       a single instrument
  ' 3. Fixed code for constrained TC policy in {\tt R} -- still need to do matlab
  ' Changes (2/16/12)
  ' 1. Fixed problem with constrained optimization when
       number of evaluation periods is not the same as
       the number of instrument periods
       (subroutine mcz_opt_qp). This undoes part of the
       1/17/12 change #3
  ' Changes (2/13/12)
  ' 1. Added "d=" option for TC damping factor (!tcdamp)
  ' Changes (1/30/12)
  ' 1. Modified subroutine mca_opt_qp to set options in matlab
       quadprog function call
  ' Changes (1/17/12)
  ' 1. Added new subroutine (mcz_opt_tc) and new simtype (opttc)
  ' 2. Added new keywords: ideriv, for sopt string
                   /xopen, /xclose for R and matlab
  ' 3. Modified subroutine mcz_opt_qp so that the dimensions of the
       initial and transformed constraint matrices are based on !ndrv not !nevl
  ' 4. Dropped the explicit optqp simtype
Uses make_frbus_mcevars 164, mce_load_frbus 160, mce_run 88, mcz_opt_qp 138,
```

mcz\_opt\_tc 143, mcz\_sim 105, and mcz\_solvit 114.

#### 6.2.2 run model consistent expectations

```
\langle run \ model \ consistent \ expectations \ 88 \rangle \equiv
                                                                  (211)
88
         subroutine mce_run(string m_opts, string a_opts, string s_opts)
       ' Driver program
         %mcestart = @word(@pagesmpl,1)
         %mceend = @word(@pagesmpl,2)
       ' 1. Examine m_opts string (defines or creates models, mce errors and instruments)
       ' Case 1: null string (ie, "")
                 => use existing models whose names are contained in %_$_mod_b and
                    %_$_mod_f; use existing objects _$_mce_instrus
                    and _$_mce_errs.
       ' Case 2: string contains the keywords "create" and "mod=<modname>"
                 => a model named <modname> is in the workfile and contains explicit
                    leads; parse it to create the objects _$_mod_b, _$_mod_f,
                    _$_mce_instrus, and _$_mce_errs
       'Case 3: string contains the keywords "mod_b=", "mod_f=", "mce_errs=", "mce_instrus
                 or the keywords "mod_b=", "mod_f=", "mce_vars="  
                 => each keyword must be assigned to a string variable, whose contents are
                    used to define _$_mod_b, _$_mod_f, _$_mce_errs, and
                    _$_mce_instrus
         if @isempty(m_opts) = 1 then
         <sup>,</sup> ********************************
         ' case 1 code
           !m_case = 1
           !z1 = @isobject(%_\$_mod_b)
           !z2 = @isobject(%_$_mod_f)
           !z3 = @isobject("_$_mce_instrus")
           !z4 = @isobject("_$_mce_errs")
           !zsum = !z1+!z2+!z3+!z4
           if !zsum <> 4 then
             %err = "When the first argument to mce_run is a null string, a previous call to
             %err = %err + "mce_run must have placed the names of the backword and "
             %err = 5err + "forward looking models, list of mce instruments names "
             %err = %err + "and list of mce error names in various strings; at least one "
             %err = %err + "these strings either does not exist or contains the name of "
```

%err = %err + "an object that does not exist. Execution terminates."

```
@uiprompt(%err)
  stop
  endif
'find alias of active scenario
%endog_active = {%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist("@active")
%endog_actual = {%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist
%word1_active = @word(%endog_active,1)
%word1_actual = @word(%endog_actual,1)
!a1 = @strlen(%word1_active) - @strlen(%word1_actual)
string _$_sufsim = @right(%word1_active,!a1)
else
m_opts = @lower(m_opts)
m_opts = @replace(m_opts," ","")
m_opts = @replace(m_opts,","," ")
m_opts = " " + m_opts + " "
if @instr(m_opts,"create") and @instr(m_opts,"mod=") then
, **********************
' case 2 code
  !m_case = 2
  call mcz_equalopt("mod",m_opts)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    %temp1 = @left(%temp,1)
    if %temp1 = "%" then
      %mod = @lower({%temp})
      else
      %mod = @lower(%temp)
      endif
    call mcz_parsemod({%mod})
    endif
  !z1 = @instr(m_opts,"mod_b=")
  !z2 = @instr(m_opts, "mod_f=")
  !z3 = @instr(m_opts,"mce_errs=")
  !z4 = @instr(m_opts,"mce_instrus=")
  !z5 = @instr(m_opts,"mce_vars=")
  !zsum1 = (!z1>0)+(!z2>0)+(!z3>0)+(!z4>0)
  !zsum2 = (!z1>0)+(!z2>0)+(!z5>0)
  if !zsum1 = 4 or !zsum2 = 3 then
  <sup>,</sup> *****************************
  , case 3 code
    !m_case = 3
    call mcz_equalopt("mod_b",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
      %temp = @lower({%temp})
```

```
%_{\text{s_mod_b}} = %_{\text{temp}}
      call mcz_equalopt("mod_f",m_opts)
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        %_{\text{s_mod_f}} = %_{\text{temp}}
        endif
      call mcz_equalopt("mce_errs",m_opts)
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        group _$_mce_errs {%temp}
        endif
      call mcz_equalopt("mce_instrus",m_opts)
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        group _$_mce_instrus {%temp}
        endif
      else
    , ************
    ' m_opt string does not conform to a valid case
      @uiprompt("first argument to subroutine mce_run is incorrectly specified")
      stop
      endif
    endif
  endif
if !m_case = 2 or !m_case = 3 then
 call mcz_hasopt("adds",m_opts)
  if !hasflag = 1 then
    {%_$_mod_b}.addassign @all
    {%_$_mod_f}.addassign @all
    endif
  call mcz_hasopt("track",m_opts)
  if !hasflag = 1 then
    %track = "yes"
    %track_start = @word(@pagesmpl,1)
    %track_end = @word(@pagesmpl,2)
    call mcz_equalopt("tstart",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %track_start = @lower(%temp)
    call mcz_equalopt("tend",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %track_end = @lower(%temp)
      endif
```

```
smpl %track_start %track_end
     {%_$_mod_b}.addinit(v=n) @all
     {%_$_mod_f}.addinit(v=n) @all
     endif
   endif
 if !m\_case = 2 then
   group _$_mce_errs {{\mod}_targs}
   group _$_mce_instrus {{%mod}_instrus}
   endif
 if !m\_case = 3 then
   call mcz_equalopt("mce_vars",m_opts)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %temp = @lower({%temp})
     %errs = @wcross("e",%temp)
     group _$_mce_errs {%errs}
     %instrus = @wcross(%temp,"_a")
     group _$_mce_instrus {%instrus}
     endif
   endif
' 2. Examine a_opts string (specifies mce algorithm)
' Case 1: blank string and %existing_algos = "yes"
          => do not call mcz_algo (use existing settings)
' Case 2: blank string and %existing_algos <> "yes"
          => call mcz_algo to set default options
' Case 3: nonblank string
          => call mcz_algo using string to set options overrides
 if @isempty(a_opts) = 1 then
   if %existing_algos = "yes" then
     !a\_case = 1
     else
     !a\_case = 2
     call mcz_algo(%_$_mod_b,%_$_mod_f," ",_$_mce_instrus,_$_mce_errs)
     endif
   else
   !a\_case = 3
   call mcz_algo(%_$_mod_b,%_$_mod_f,a_opts,_$_mce_instrus,_$_mce_errs)
   endif
```

```
' 3. Examine s_opts string (specifies type of simulation)
if @isempty(s_opts) = 1 then
   @uiprompt("error: no simulation action requested")
   stop
   endif
' make a copy of s_opts for parsing within this subroutine
' (the original is passed to other subroutines for additional
' parsing)
 string _$_opts = s_opts
 _$_opts = @lower(_$_opts)
 _$_opts = @replace(_$_opts," ","")
 _$_opts = @replace(_$_opts,","," ")
 _$_opts = " " + _$_opts + " "
' check for keywords that pertain to all simulation types
 call mcz_hasopt("scen",_$_opts)
 if !hasflag = 1 then
   call mcz_equalopt("suf",_$_opts)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     string _$_sufsim = @lower(%temp)
     else
     string _$_sufsim = "_1"
     endif
   %sufsim = _$_sufsim
   %scenname = "mce_sim" + _$_sufsim
   {%_$_mod_b}.scenario(n,a=%sufsim) %scenname
   {%_$_mod_f}.scenario(n,a=%sufsim) %scenname
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("solveopt",_$_opts)
 \{\%_{\text{s-mod}}\}. solveopt (o=n,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {\%_s_mod_f}.solveopt(o=n,g=12,z=1e-12)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   {%_$_mod_b}.solveopt({{%temp}})
   {\%_{mod_f}.solveopt({\{\text{temp}\}\}})}
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("txt",_$_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   for !j = 1 to {%temp}.@linecount
     %tmp = @lower({%temp}.@line(!j))
     {%tmp}
     next
   endif
```

!mceshow = 1

```
call mcz_equalopt("o",_$_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   !mceshow = @val(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("sstart",_$_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %mcestart = @lower(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("send",_$_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %mceend = @lower(%temp)
   endif
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 !nqtrs = @obssmpl
 call mcz_hasopt("cleanup",_$_opts)
 if !hasflag = 1 then
   %cleanup = "yes"
   else
   %cleanup = "no"
   endif
 call mcz_hasopt("dontstop",_$_opts)
 if !hasflag = 1 then
   %dontstop = "yes"
   if @maxerrs - @errorcount < 2 then
     !tt = @errorcount + 2
     setmaxerrs !tt
     endif
   else
   %dontstop = "no"
   endif
' create various program variables and objects that are needed by
' all simulation types; compute initial Jacobian in some cases
 call mcz_sim_setup
 if %mcz_sim_setup = "err" then
   %mce_finish = "failed_solve"
   return
   endif
' determine simulation type
 call mcz_equalopt("type",_$_opts)
 if @len(%temp) > 0 then
   %simtype = @lower(%temp)
   if %simtype = "single" then
     call mcz_sim(_$_opts)
```

```
if %mcz_sim = "err" then
           %mce_finish = "failed_solve"
           return
           endif
         else
         if %simtype = "opt" or %simtype = "opttc" then
           call mcz_equalopt("targs",_$_opts)
           if @len(%temp)>0 then
             %targs = @lower(%temp)
             else
             Quiprompt("error: targs keyword is missing")
             stop
             endif
           call mcz_equalopt("instrus",_$_opts)
           if @len(%temp)>0 then
             %instrus = @lower(%temp)
             else
             Quiprompt("error: instrus keyword is missing")
             stop
             endif
           call mcz_equalopt("cnstr",_$_opts)
           if @len(%temp)>0 then
             %cnstr = @lower(%temp)
             %cnstrflag = "yes"
             else
             text _$_blanktext
             %cnstr = "_$_blanktext"
             %cnstrflag = "no"
             endif
           call mcz_opt_setup(s_opts,{%instrus},{%targs},{%cnstr})
           @uiprompt("error: invalid simtype")
           stop
           endif
         endif
       @uiprompt("error: required simtype keyword not found")
       stop
       endif
  endsub
Defines:
  mce_run, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 41, 44, 47, 51, 54, 86, 103, and 105.
Uses \ \mathtt{mcz\_algo} \ 98, \ \mathtt{mcz\_equalopt} \ 102a, \ \mathtt{mcz\_hasopt} \ 102b, \ \mathtt{mcz\_opt\_setup} \ 127, \ \mathtt{mcz\_parsemod} \ 95,
  mcz\_sim\ 105,\ and\ mcz\_sim\_setup\ 103.
```

### 6.2.3 determine endogenous and exogenous variables

```
\langle determine\ endogenous\ and\ exogenous\ variables\ 95 \rangle \equiv
95
                                                                        (211)
        subroutine mcz_parsemod(model modo)
        ' This subroutine takes modo, a model with explicit leads, and creates
        ' four objects. The name of each created object starts with the name of the
        ' input model, which is denoted by <modname>.
        ' 1. Model _$_<modname>_b is the same as modo but with all leads replaced
              with exogenous variables
        ' 2. Model _$_<modname>_f contains the MCE error equations
        '3. String <modname>_instrus of the names of the added exogenous variables,
              which are the instruments to be used to drive the MCE errors to zero
        ' 4. String <modname>_targs of the names of the endogenous variables in
              <modname>_f, which are the names of MCE error variables
        ' preliminaries
          %ok_chars = "=-+*(^ "
          freeze(_$_modtext) modo.text
          string _$_endog = @lower(modo.@endoglist)
          !nvars = @wcount(_$_endog)
          %leadnames = " "
          %errnames = " "
          %mm = @lower(modo.@name)
          %_{\text{mod}} = "_{\text{mm}} + %_{\text{mm}} + "_{\text{b}}"
          %_{\rm s_mod_f} = "_{\rm s_m} + %mm + "_f"
          model {%_$_mod_b}
          model {%_$_mod_f}
        ' create model _$_<modname>_b
          smpl @all
          for !i2 = 1 to _$_modtext.@linecount
              %tmp2 = @ltrim(@lower(_$_modtext.@line(!i2)))
              %aa = @left(%tmp2,1)
              if %aa <> "@" then
                   for !i1 = 1 to !nvars
                       !occurrence = 1
                       %tmp1 = @word(_$_endog,!i1) + "("
                       !kk = @instr(%tmp2,%tmp1)
                       if !kk > 0 then
                           while !kk > 0
                                'three possibilities
                                ' 1. it is part of another variable name
```

' 2. it is a lag

```
' 3. it is a lead
                         'look at character in %tmp2 just before %tmp1 to make sure tha
                         'is not part of a longer variable or coefficient name
                         %before = @mid(%tmp2, !kk-1,1)
                         if @instr(%ok_chars, %before) > 0 then
                              %tmp3 = @mid(%tmp2,!kk)
                              !kkll = @instr(%tmp3,"(")
                              !kkrr = @instr(%tmp3,")")
                              %laglead = @mid(%tmp3,!kkll, !kkrr-!kkll+1)
                              !11 = 0 + {%laglead}
                              if !11 <= 0 then \, 'it is a lag -- skip it
                                 !occurrence = !occurrence + 1
                                 endif
                              if !ll > 0 then 'it is a lead -- define a new variable
                                  %aaa = @word(_$_endog,!i1) + %laglead
                                  %bbb = @word(_$_endog,!i1) + "_ld_" + @str(!l1)
                                  series {%bbb} = {%aaa}
                                  %tmp4 = @replace(%tmp2,%aaa,%bbb,1)
                                  \%tmp2 = \%tmp4
                                  %leadnames = %leadnames + " " + %bbb
                                       'it is part of another variable name -- skip it
                              else
                              !occurrence = !occurrence + 1
                              endif
                         !kk = @instr(%tmp2,%tmp1,!occurrence)
                         wend
                     endif
                next
           endif
         {\"_\$_\mod_\b}.append {\"\tmp2}
      next
' create _$_<modname>_f
  %leadnames = @wunique(%leadnames)
  'smpl @all
  for !i1 = 1 to @wcount(%leadnames)
      %tmp1 = @word(%leadnames,!i1)
      !k1 = @instr(%tmp1,"_ld_")
      %tmp2 = @left(%tmp1,!k1-1)
      %tmp3 = @mid(%tmp1,!k1+4)
      %tmp4 = "err_" + %tmp2 + "_" + @str(%tmp3)
      series \{\%tmp4\} = 0
      %errnames = %errnames + " " + %tmp4
      \ensuremath{\text{wegstring}} = \ensuremath{\text{mp4}} + \ensuremath{\text{"="}} + \ensuremath{\text{mp1}} + \ensuremath{\text{"-"}} + \ensuremath{\text{mp2}} + \ensuremath{\text{"("}} + \ensuremath{\text{@str(\%tmp3)}} + \ensuremath{\text{")"}}
```

```
\label{local_spend} $$ \mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath}\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath}\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensuremath}\ensu
```

 $^{\prime}$  create mce instrument and target strings

```
string {%mm}_instrus = %leadnames
string {%mm}_targs = %errnames
```

#### endsub

Defines:

mcz\_parsemod, used in chunk 88.

# 6.2.4 determine default method, linesearch, and other options

```
\langle determine\ default\ method,\ linesearch,\ and\ other\ options\ 98 \rangle \equiv
98
          subroutine mcz_algo(string mcz_mod_b, string mcz_mod_f, string mcz_algo_opts, group
          %existing_algos = "yes"
         mcz_algo_opts = @lower(mcz_algo_opts)
         mcz_algo_opts = @replace(mcz_algo_opts," ","")
         mcz_algo_opts = @replace(mcz_algo_opts,","," ")
         mcz_algo_opts = " " + mcz_algo_opts + " "
        ' default values for method options
         %meth = "newton"
         %jinit = "interp"
          !nskip = 12
          !jtrigger = .5
        ' default values for linesearch options
          %linemeth = "armijo"
          !linetrigger = .9
          !mcelinemax = 10
          !lambda = 1.0
          !1rat = .5
          !mcz_step_max = 1.0
        ' default values for other options
          !mceconv = .00001
          !mcemaxiter = 20
          !mceptrb = .001
          !broymax = 600
        ' just in case
          %terminal = "no"
        ' are there overrides to defaults?
          if @len(mcz_algo_opts) > 0 then
          , ******************
          ' look for method option
            call mcz_equalopt("meth",mcz_algo_opts)
            if @len(%temp)>0 then
              %meth = @lower(%temp)
              if %meth = "broy" then
                %jinit = "bd"
```

```
%jupdate = "na"
     %linemeth = "lmr"
      !mcemaxiter = 200
      endif
    if %meth = "qnewton" then
     %jinit = "bd"
     %jupdate = "na"
     %linemeth = "lmr"
      !mcemaxiter = 200
     call mcz_equalopt("broymax",mcz_algo_opts)
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !broymax = @val(%temp)
        endif
      endif
    if %meth = "ft" then
     %jinit = "identity"
     %jupdate = "na"
     %linemeth = "na"
      !mcemaxiter = 500
      endif
    endif
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
' look for jinit and jt options
 call mcz_equalopt("jinit",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %temp = @lower(%temp)
   if @instr(%temp,"interp(") then
      !k1 = @instr(%temp,"(")
      !nskip = -@val(@mid(%temp,!k1))
     %tmp1 = @mid(%temp,!k1)
     %jinit = "interp"
     else
     %jinit = @lower(%temp)
     endif
   endif
  call mcz_equalopt("jt",mcz_algo_opts)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !jtrigger = @val(%temp)
    endif
, ************
' look for jupdate option
 %jupdate = %jinit
 call mcz_equalopt("jupdate",mcz_algo_opts)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
```

```
%temp = @lower(%temp)
   if @instr(%temp,"interp(") then
      !k1 = @instr(%temp,"(")
      !nskip = -@val(@mid(%temp,!k1))
     %tmp1 = @mid(%temp,!k1)
     %jupdate = "interp"
      else
     %jupdate = @lower(%temp)
      endif
    endif
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
' look for options related to linesearch
 call mcz_equalopt("lmeth",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %linemeth = @lower(%temp)
    endif
 call mcz_equalopt("lt",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !linetrigger = @val(%temp)
    endif
 call mcz_equalopt("lmax",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !mcelinemax = @val(%temp)
 call mcz_equalopt("lambda",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !lambda = @val(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("stepmax",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !mcz_step_max = @val(%temp)
   endif
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
' look for other options
 call mcz_equalopt("c",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !mceconv = @val(%temp)
    endif
 call mcz_equalopt("m",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !mcemaxiter = @val(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("p",mcz_algo_opts)
```

```
if @len(%temp)>0 then
      !mceptrb = @val(%temp)
     endif
   endif
<sup>,</sup> **************************
' verify the MCE instrument and error arguments
  !nmceinstrus = _$_mce_instrus.@count
  !nmcetargs = _$_mce_errs.@count
 if !nmcetargs <> !nmceinstrus then
   @uiprompt("Error: There must be as many mce errors as there are mce instruments.")
   stop
   endif
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
' check that mce instruments are exogenous variables or add factors
' in the lag model
 %exog_vnames = {%_$_mod_b}.@exoglist
 %adds_vnames = {%_$_mod_b}.@addfactors
 %exog_vnames = %exog_vnames + " " + %adds_vnames
 %endog_vnames = {%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist
 for !i = 1 to _$_mce_instrus.@count
   %vvv = _$_mce_instrus.@seriesname(!i)
   !cc = @wfindnc(%exog_vnames,%vvv)
   if !cc = 0 then
     %errstring = "mce control variable " + %vvv + " is not an exogenous variable or add factor
     @uiprompt(%errstring)
     stop
     endif
   next
, ***********
' check that mce errors are endogenous variables in the lead model
 %endog_lnames = {%_$_mod_f}.@endoglist
 for !i = 1 to _$_mce_errs.@count
   %vvv = _$_mce_errs.@seriesname(!i)
   !cc = @wfindnc(%endog_lnames,%vvv)
   if !cc = 0 then
     %errstring = "mce error variable " + %vvv + " is not an endogenous variable in the lead
     @uiprompt(%errstring)
     stop
     endif
```

```
next
```

```
endsub
```

Defines:

mcz\_algo, used in chunk 88. Uses mcz\_equalopt 102a.

## 6.2.5 parse options containing equal signs

```
⟨parse options containing equal signs 102a⟩≡
102a
                                                                           (211)
            subroutine mcz_equalopt(string optionstext,string opts)
          ' parse an option that contains an "=" \operatorname{sign}
            optionstext = " " + optionstext + "="
            !k10 = @instr(opts,optionstext)
            if !k10 > 0 then
              !k11 = @len(optionstext)
              %tmp10 = @mid(opts,!k10+!k11)
              !k12 = @instr(%tmp10," ")
              %temp = @left(%tmp10,!k12-1)
              else
              %temp = ""
              endif
            endsub
```

#### \ C

Defines:

mcz\_equalopt, used in chunks 88, 98, 105, 127, and 160.

#### 6.2.6 parse options not containing equal signs

#### endsub

Defines:

mcz\_hasopt, used in chunks 88, 105, and 127.

6.2.7 create common variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables

```
\langle create\ common\ variables,\ strings,\ matrices,\ vectors,\ and\ tables\ 103 \rangle \equiv
103
                                                            (211)
         subroutine mcz_sim_setup
       ' create various program variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables
       ' that are common to all simulation types
         !tmcetargs = !nmcetargs * !nqtrs
         !tmceinstrus = !nmceinstrus * !nqtrs
         %mce_targ_names = _$_mce_errs.@members
         %mce_instru_names = _$_mce_instrus.@members
         string _$_mod_f_exog = @lower({%_$_mod_f}.@exoglist)
         string _$_mod_b_endog = @lower({%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist)
         %fvars = @wintersect(_$_mod_f_exog,_$_mod_b_endog)
         {%_$_mod_f}.override {%fvars}
         !re_counter = 0
       ' create additional matrix/vector objects
         vector(!mcemaxiter+1) _$_mce_loss_vec
         vector(!mcemaxiter+1) _$_mce_conv_vec
         vector( !nmceinstrus*!nqtrs) _$_mce_direction = 0
         vector( !nmceinstrus*!nqtrs) _$_mce_instru_vec = 0
         vector(!nmcetargs*!nqtrs) _$_mce_gap_vec
         matrix _$_mce_ptrb_mat = @filledmatrix(!nqtrs,!nmceinstrus,!mceptrb)
         matrix(!nmcetargs*!nqtrs,1) _$_mce_targ_vec
         matrix(!tmcetargs,1) _$_mce_targ_dvec
       ' misc
         table(!mcemaxiter+2,6) mce_sim_stats
       ' compute initial jacobian except when it is an identity matrix
       ' or when its been created by a previous call to mce_run
         if %jinit <> "identity" and !a_case <> 1 then
          !mcetry = 1
```

```
smpl %mcestart %mceend
call mcz_solvit
if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
    %mcz_sim_setup = "err"
    return
    endif

call mcz_derivs
endif
```

### endsub

## Defines:

mcz\_sim\_setup, used in chunk 88. Uses mce\_run 88, mcz\_derivs 116, and mcz\_solvit 114.

### 6.2.8 model consistent coefficient simulation

!mhistory = 4

```
\langle model\ consistent\ coefficient\ simulation\ 105 \rangle \equiv
105
                                                                 (211)
          subroutine mcz_sim(string mcz_sim_options)
          %mcz_sim = "ok"
        ' 1. set options based on defaults and overrides in string mcz_sim_options
        ' for some unknown reason, sometimes eviews bombs unless mcz_sim_options
        ' is assigned to another string before processing it
          %mso = mcz_sim_options
          %mso = @lower(%mso)
          %mso = @replace(%mso," ","")
          %mso = @replace(%mso,","," ")
          %mso = " " + %mso + " "
          %terminal = "no"
          %mcevars_b = " "
          %mcevars_f = " "
          if @len(%mso) > 0 then
           call mcz_hasopt("terminal",%mso)
            if !hasflag = 1 then
             %terminal = "yes"
             call mcz_equalopt("mcevars_b",%mso)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               %mcevars_b = @lower(%temp)
               call mcz_equalopt("mcevars_f",%mso)
               if @len(%temp)>0 then
                 %mcevars_f = @lower(%temp)
                 if @wcount(%mcevars_b) <> @wcount(%mcevars_f) then
                   %estring = "Error: mcevars_b and mcevars_f have different numbers of variables"
                   @uiprompt(%estring)
                   stop
                   endif
                 endif
               endif
             endif
            endif
          if %linemeth = "lmr" then
```

```
!tmin = .1
   !tmax = .5
   !gammak = 10^{-4}
   endif
' 2. set up table of iteration-by-iteration statistics
if @isobject("mce_sim_stats") then
   delete mce_sim_stats
   endif
 table(!mcemaxiter+2,6) mce_sim_stats
 mce_sim_stats.setwidth(1:1) 6
 mce_sim_stats.setwidth(2:6) 11
 mce_sim_stats.setlines(a2:f2) +b
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,1,"iter")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,2,"converge")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,2,"stat")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,3,"SSR")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,3,"stat")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,4,"step")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,4,"length")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,5,"step")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,5,"iters")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,6,"Newton MCE")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,6,"deriv's?")
' 3. information text file
if @isobject("mce_sim_text") then
   delete mce_sim_text
   endif
 text mce_sim_text
 mce_sim_text.append Simulation start = {%mcestart}
 mce_sim_text.append Simulation end = {%mceend}
 mce_sim_text.append MCE method = %meth
 if %meth = "newton" then
   mce_sim_text.append -- Initial jacobian = %jinit
   if %jinit = "interp" then
    mce_sim_text.append ---- Jacobian interpolation parameter = {!nskip}
    endif
```

```
mce_sim_text.append -- Recompute Jacobian based on jtrigger = {!jtrigger}
   mce_sim_text.append -- Recompute jacobian using method = {%jupdate}
   endif
 if %meth = "broy" or %meth = "qnewton" then
   mce_sim_text.append -- Initial Jacobian approximation = %jinit
   if %jinit = "interp" then
     mce_sim_text.append ---- Interpolation parameter = {!nskip}
     endif
   if %meth = "qnewton" then
     mce_sim_text.append ---- QNewton iteration switch = {!broymax}
     endif
   endif
 if %meth = "ft" then
   mce_sim_text.append -- Fixed step size =
                                            {!lambda}
 mce_sim_text.append Linesearch method = {%linemeth}
 if %linemeth <> "na" then
   mce_sim_text.append -- Linesearch trigger = {!linetrigger}
   mce_sim_text.append -- Maximum linesearch iterations = {!mcelinemax}
   endif
 mce_sim_text.append Convergence criteria = {!mceconv}
 mce_sim_text.append Maximum number of MCE iterations = {!mcemaxiter}
 mce_sim_text.append MCE instrument perturbation factor = {!mceptrb}
 mce_sim_text.append Intermediate output level factor = {!mceshow}
 mce_sim_text.append MCE instrument variables = {%mce_instru_names}
 mce_sim_text.append MCE error variables = {%mce_targ_names}
 mce_sim_text.append There are {!tmceinstrus} instrument and {!tmcetargs} error observations
 !re_counter = !re_counter + 1
' 4. solution iterations
<sup>,</sup>*******************************
 ' initialize counters, switches, etc.
 !mcetry = 0
 %mce_converge = "no"
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 _$_mce_instru_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_mce_instrus))
 <sup>,</sup>*******************************
 ' start of iteration loop
```

```
while !mcetry <= !mcemaxiter and %mce_converge = "no"
  !mcetry = !mcetry + 1
  setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,1,!mcetry-1,0)
  vector _$_instru_prev = _$_mce_instru_vec
  vector _$_gap_prev = _$_mce_gap_vec
  !mcz_step = !mcz_step_max
  call mcz_solvit
  if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
    %mcz_sim = "err"
    return
    endif
  if !mcetry > 1 then
    !gamma = _$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry)/_$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
    !loss_prev = _$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
    setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,5,1,0)
    if %linemeth <> "none" and !gamma > !linetrigger then
      if %linemeth = "lmr" then
        call mcz_lmr
        if %mcz_lmr = "err" then
          %mcz_sim = "err"
          return
          endif
        endif
      if %linemeth = "armijo" then
        call mcz_armijo
        if %mcz_armijo = "err" then
          %mcz_sim = "err"
          return
          endif
        endif
      endif
    endif
  if !mceshow < 3 then
    statusline mce solution, iteration !mcetry, f(x) = !nconv
    endif
' test for convergence or iteration limit
 mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,2) = _$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry)
  if _$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry) < !mceconv then</pre>
   %mce_converge = "yes"
   mce_sim_text.append At iteration {!mcetry}, convergence
```

```
%mce_finish = "yes"
 if !mcetry = !mcemaxiter and _$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry) >= !mceconv then
   mce_sim_text.append No convergence in {!mcemaxiter} iterations
   if %dontstop = "yes" then
     %mce_finish = "no"
     %mce_converge = "yes"
     mce_sim_text.append Terminating call to mce_run, but execution continues
     Quiprompt("No convergence in maximum number of iterations. Execution terminating.")
     stop
     endif
   endif
' continue if not converged
 if %mce_converge = "no" then
 , *****************
  ' Newton algorithm (optionally update MCE jacobian)
   if %meth = "newton" then
     if !mcetry = 1 then
       if %jinit = "identity" then
         matrix _$_mce_der_mat = !dfactor*@identity(!nmceinstrus*!nqtrs)
         endif
       if %jinit = "bd" then
         for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
           !r = (!ijj-1)*!nqtrs
           matrix _$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj} = @subextract(_$_mce_der_mat,!r+1,!r+1,!r+!nqtrs,!r+
         delete(noerr) _$_mce_der_mat
       if %jinit <> "identity" then
         mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+3,6) = "yes"
         endif
       else
       if (!gamma >= !jtrigger and %jupdate <> "none") then
         %jinit_bac = %jinit
         %jinit = %jupdate
         call mcz_derivs
         %jinit = %jinit_bac
         endif
       endif
     if %jinit = "bd" then
       for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
```

```
vector _$_vec_adds = -_$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj}*@subextract(_$_mce_gap_vec,(
        matplace(_$_mce_direction,_$_vec_adds,(!ijj-1)*!nqtrs+1,1)
        next
      else
      _$_mce_direction = -(_$_mce_der_mat*_$_mce_gap_vec)
      endif
    endif
<sup>,</sup> **********************
' Broyden algorithms
  if %meth = "broy" or %meth = "qnewton" then
    if !mcetry = 1 then
      if %jinit <> "identity" then
        _$_mce_direction = -(_$_mce_der_mat*_$_mce_gap_vec)
        matrix _$_mce_der_mat = @identity(!nmceinstrus*!nqtrs)
        _$_mce_direction = -_$_mce_gap_vec
        endif
      if %jinit = "bd" then
        for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
          !r = (!ijj-1)*!nqtrs
          matrix _$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj} = @subextract(_$_mce_der_mat,!r+1,!r+1,!r+1,!r+1)
          next
        if %bmeth = "qnewton" then
          delete(noerr) _$_mce_der_mat
          endif
        endif
      endif
    if !mcetry > 1 then
      vector _$_instru_delta = _$_mce_instru_vec - _$_instru_prev
      vector _$_gap_delta = _$_mce_gap_vec - _$_gap_prev
    , **********
      if %meth = "broy" then
        matrix _$_jy = _$_mce_der_mat*_$_gap_delta
        matrix _$_sj = @transpose(_$_instru_delta)*_$_mce_der_mat
        scalar _$_sjf = @sum(@transpose(_$_instru_delta)*_$_jy)
        _{\text{s_mce_der_mat}} = _{\text{mce_der_mat}} + ((_{\text{s_instru_delta}} - _{\text{s_jy}})*_{\text{s_j}})/_{_{\text{s_j}}}
        _$_mce_direction = -(_$_mce_der_mat*_$_mce_gap_vec)
        endif
    , **********
      if %meth = "qnewton" then
        if !mcetry = 2 then
        ' create some matrices on first pass
```

```
vector(!broymax) _$_stp_nrm
      matrix(!tmceinstrus,!broymax) _$_stp
      vector (!broymax) _$_lam_rec
      matrix(!tmceinstrus,1) _$_z
      vector(!broymax) _$_counter
      for !iq = 1 to !broymax
              _$_counter(!iq) = !iq
             next
       endif
if !mcetry <= !broymax + 1 then
       !q = !mcetry-1
       !f = !q
      else
       !q = @mod(!mcetry-1,!broymax) + 1
       !f = !broymax
       call shiftleft(_$_counter,1)
       endif
colplace(_$_stp,_$_instru_delta,!q)
_$_stp_nrm(!q) = @norm(_$_instru_delta,2)
_{\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{1}{2} = \frac
if %jinit = "bd" and !mcetry <= !broymax + 1 then
      for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
              vector _$_vec_adds = -_$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj}* @subextract(_$_mce_gap_vec,(!ijj-1
             matplace(_$_z,_$_vec_adds,(!ijj-1)*!nqtrs+1,1)
       ലിടെ
       _{z} = -_{mce_{gap_{vec}}}
       endif
if !mcetry > 2 then
      for !kbroy = 2 to !f
              !k0 = _$_counter(!kbroy)
              !k1 = _{counter(!kbroy - 1)}
              !a = _$_lam_rec(!k1)/_$_lam_rec(!k0)
              !b = _{lam_rec(!k1)} - 1
              _{z=-}z = _{z} + (!a*@columnextract(_$_stp, !k0) + !b*@columnextract(_$_stp, !k1))*(0t)
              next
       endif
!nrm2 = _\$_stp_nrm(!q)^2
!lam = _$_lam_rec(!q)
!stz = @sum(@transpose(_$_instru_delta)*_$_z)
_$_mce_direction = (!nrm2*_$_z-(1-!lam)*!stz*_$_instru_delta)/(!nrm2-!lam*!stz)
endif
```

```
endif
      endif
   , *****************
   ' Fair-Taylor algorithm
     if %meth = "ft" then
      _$_mce_direction = -!lambda*_$_mce_gap_vec
      endif
   , *****************
     endif
   wend
' 5. final steps
scalar _$_iterations = !mcetry
 if !mceshow = 2 then
   close mce_sim_stats
   endif
 if !mceshow = 1 or !mceshow = 2 then
   if @isobject("mce_sim_spool") then
    delete mce_sim_spool
     endif
   spool mce_sim_spool
   mce_sim_spool.append mce_sim_stats
   {\tt mce\_sim\_spool.append\ mce\_sim\_text}
   mce_sim_spool.name untitled01 mce_sim_stats
   mce_sim_spool.name untitled02 mce_sim_text
   show mce_sim_spool
   endif
 if !mceshow < 3 then
   statusline mcz_sim finished
   endif
 if %simtype = "single" and %cleanup = "yes" then
   delete(noerr) _$_*
   endif
```

### endsub

Defines:

mcz\_sim, used in chunks 86, 88, 138, 143, 151, and 153.

Uses mce\_run 88, mcz\_armijo 124, mcz\_derivs 116, mcz\_equalopt 102a, mcz\_hasopt 102b, mcz\_lmr 122, mcz\_solvit 114, and shiftleft 158.

### 6.2.9 solve model consistent instrument values

```
\langle solve\ model\ consistent\ instrument\ values\ 114 \rangle \equiv
114
                                                                        (211)
        subroutine mcz_solvit
         ' This subroutine first sets the MCE instrument values based on the current
         ' optimal direction and choice of step size, and then solves the models
           %mcz_solvit = "ok"
         ' update instrument values based on current direction and step size
           if !mcetry > 1 then
             mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,4) = !mcz_step
             _$_mce_instru_vec = _$_instru_prev + !mcz_step*_$_mce_direction
             matrix _$_tmp_mat = @unvec(_$_mce_instru_vec,!nqtrs)
             mtos(_$_tmp_mat,_$_mce_instrus)
             endif
         ' solve lag model
           smpl %mcestart %mceend
           !err_before = @errorcount
           {\%_{\text{mod}}}.solve
           !err_after = @errorcount
           if !err_after > !err_before then
             if %dontstop = "yes" then
               %mcz_solvit = "err"
               return
               else
               @uiprompt("Error in solving lag model: execution terminating")
               endif
             endif
         ' optionally set terminal conditions on first iteration
           if !mcetry = 1 and %terminal = "yes" then
             call mcz_terminal
             endif
         ' solve lead model
           smpl %mcestart %mceend
           !err_before = @errorcount
           {\%_{mod_f}.solve}
           !err_after = @errorcount
           if !err_after > !err_before then
             if %dontstop = "yes" then
               %mcz_solvit = "err"
```

```
return
        else
        @uiprompt("Error in solving lead model: execution terminating")
        stop
        endif
      endif
  ' create group of the solution values of the mce target variables
  ' on the first iteration
    if !mcetry = 1 then
      {%_$_mod_f}.makegroup _$_mce_errs_sols {%mce_targ_names}
      endif
  ' compute mce error functions
    _$_mce_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_mce_errs_sols))
    _$_mce_gap_vec = _$_mce_targ_vec
    !nloss = @norm(_$_mce_gap_vec,2)^2
    mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,3) = !nloss
    _$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry) = !nloss
    !nconv = @max(@abs(_$_mce_gap_vec))
    _$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry) = !nconv
    if !mcetry > 1 then
      !gamma = !nloss/_$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
      endif
    if !mceshow = 2 then
      show mce_sim_stats
      endif
 endsub
Defines:
 mcz_solvit, used in chunks 86, 103, 105, 122, and 124.
Uses mcz_terminal 125.
```

# 6.2.10 compute derivatives of mce targets wrt mce instruments

```
116
      \langle compute \ derivatives \ of \ mce \ targets \ wrt \ mce \ instruments \ 116 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (211)
         subroutine mcz_derivs
         'This subroutine computes the derivatives of the mce targets wrt the mce instruments
          mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,6) = "yes"
          matrix _$_mce_der_mat = @filledmatrix(!nmceinstrus*!nqtrs,!nmcetargs*!nqtrs,0)
          if !mcetry > 1 then
             '_$_mce_ptrb_mat = @abs(@unvec(!mcz_step*_$_mce_direction,!nqtrs)) + 1e-6
             _$_mce_ptrb_mat = @abs(@unvec(!mcz_step*_$_mce_direction,!nqtrs)) + 1e-4
             endif
           smpl %mcestart %mceend
           _$_mce_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_mce_errs_sols))
           !maxlead = 1
         <sup>,</sup> ************************
         ' construct vector that determines when exact derivatives
         ' need to be computed
         '_$_dvec > 0 => period in which derivatives are to be simulated
         '_$_dvec = 1 => but derivatives do not have to be spread/interpolated forward or ba
         '_$_dvec = 2 => and derivatives have to be spread forward down diagonals
         '_$_dvec = 3 => and derivatives have to be spread backward up diagonals
         '_$_dvec = 4 => and derivaties have to be interpolated backward along diagonals
         ' _$_dvec = 5 => hybrid
          vector(!nqtrs) _$_dvec = 0
           , *******************
          if %jinit = "every" then
            _{\text{s_dvec}} = _{\text{s_dvec}} + 1
             endif
           , ******************
           if %jinit = "interp" then
             _{\text{s_dvec}(1)} = 1
             _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead) = 4
            for !ij0 = (1+!nskip) to (!nqtrs-!maxlead-1) step !nskip
               _{\text{s_dvec}(!ij0)} = 4
              next
```

if !maxlead > 0 then

```
for !ij0 = (!nqtrs-!maxlead+1) to !nqtrs
        _{\frac{1}{2}}dvec(!ij0) = 1
       next
     endif
   if _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead-1) = 4 then
     _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead) = 1
     endif
   endif
, ******************
 if %jinit = "bd" then
   !bd_col = @floor(!nqtrs/2)
   _{\text{s_dvec}(!bd\_col)} = 5
   endif
<sup>,</sup> ***********************
' code modified 5/27/10 to reduce the number of derivative
' sims by 1 per mc variable -- will work only when
' maxlead = 1
 if %jinit = "linear" then
   _{\text{s_dvec}(1)} = 2
   _{\text{s_dvec}(!nqtrs)} = 3
   '_$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead) = 3
   'for !ij0 = !nqtrs - !maxlead + 1 to !nqtrs
    ' _$_dvec(!ij0) = 1
    , next
   endif
, ***********
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
'Outer loop: specifies which instrument is shocked
 for !ij1 = 1 to !nmceinstrus
   %instru_name = _$_mce_instrus.@seriesname(!ij1)
   statusline computing MCE derivatives for instrument %instru_name
  , ******************
  ' Middle loop: simulates effects of instrument shock for selected time periods
   !skip = 0
   for !ij2 = 1 to !nqtrs
     !skip = !skip + 1
     if _{\text{s_dvec(!ij2)}} > 0 then
        !perturbit = _$_mce_ptrb_mat(!ij2,!ij1)
        !col = (!ij1-1)*!nqtrs + !ij2
        smpl %mcestart + !ij2-1 %mcestart + !ij2-1
        {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} + !perturbit
```

```
smpl %mcestart %mceend
 {\%_s_mod_b}.solve
 {\%_{\text{mod}f}.solve}
 _$_mce_targ_dvec = @vec(@convert(_$_mce_errs_sols))
 matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,(_$_mce_targ_dvec-_$_mce_targ_vec)/!perturbit,1,!col
 smpl %mcestart + !ij2-1 %mcestart + !ij2-1
 {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} - !perturbit
, *******************
' Inner loop: place and/or interpolates derivatives
 if %jinit <> "every" then
   for !ij3 = 1 to !nmceinstrus
     !row = (!ij3-1)*!nqtrs + 1
     matrix _$_tempa = @subextract(_$_mce_der_mat,!row,!col,!row+!nqtrs-1,!col
    if %jinit = "linear" then
     ' forward loop moves the derivative diagonally down to the right
     ', when _{\text{sdvec}} = 2
       if _{\frac{1}{2}}dvec(!ij2) = 2 then
       for !ij4 = 1 to (!nqtrs - !maxlead - 1)
         matrix _$_tempb = @subextract(_$_tempa,1,1,!nqtrs-!ij4,1)
         matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempb,!row+!ij4,!col+!ij4)
         next
       endif
      ' backward loop moves the derivative diagonally up to the left
     ' when _{\text{sdvec}} = 3
       if _{\frac{1}{2}}dvec(!ij2) = 3 then
         !ij5 = !nqtrs - !maxlead - 1
         for !ij4 = 1 to !ij5
           matrix _$_tempb = @subextract(_$_tempa,(1+!ij4),1,!nqtrs-!maxlead,:
           matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempb,!row,!col-!ij4)
           next
         endif
     ' fill unassigned elements of last !maxlead rows with zeros when _$_dvec
       if _{\text{s_dvec}(!ij2)} = 3 \text{ then}
         !ij5 = !nqtrs - 2
         matrix(1,!ij5) _$_tempc = 0
         for !ij4 = 1 to !maxlead
           matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempc,!row+!nqtrs-!ij4,!col-!nqtrs+2)
           next
         endif
```

endif

```
if (%jinit = "interp") and (_$_dvec(!ij2) = 4) then
   !nn2 = !nqtrs-!skip+1
   'fill in columns between current and previous derivative
   '_$_tempa holds current derivative, _$_tempb holds previous derivative
   matrix _$_tempa1 = @subextract(_$_tempa,1,1,!skip,1)
   matrix _$_tempa2 = @subextract(_$_tempa,!skip+1,1,!nqtrs,1)
   'previous derivative
   matrix _$_tempb = @subextract(_$_mce_der_mat,!row,!col-!skip,!row+!nqtrs-1,!col-!
   matrix _$_tempb1 = @subextract(_$_tempb,1,1,!nn2-1,1)
   matrix _$_tempb2 = @subextract(_$_tempb,!nn2,1,!nqtrs,1)
   'forward loop moves lower (ie, nonoverlapping) portion of _$_tempb diagonally dow
   for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
     matrix _$_tempb2a = @subextract(_$_tempb2,1,1,!skip-!ij4,1)
     matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempb2a,!row+!nn2-1+!ij4,!col-!skip+!ij4)
   'backward loop moves upper (ie, nonoverlapping) portion of _$_tempa diagonally up
   for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
     matrix _$_tempa1a = @subextract(_$_tempa1,1+!ij4,1,!skip,1)
     matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempa1a,!row,!col-!ij4)
     next
   'overlap loop interpolates upper part of _$_tempb and lower part of _$_tempa
   for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
     matrix _$_tempc = ((!skip-!ij4)/!skip)*_$_tempb1 + (!ij4/!skip)*_$_tempa2
     matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempc,!row+!ij4,!col-!skip+!ij4)
     next
   'optionally interpolate elements of last !maxlead rows across each row
   !qqqq = 0
   if !qqqq = 1 then
     !nn3 = !nqtrs - !maxlead + 1
     matrix _$_tempa3 = @subextract(_$_tempa,!nn3,1,!nqtrs,1)
     matrix _$_tempb3 = @subextract(_$_tempb,!nn3,1,!nqtrs,1)
     for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
       matrix _$_tempc = ((!skip-!ij4)/!skip)*_$_tempb3 + (!ij4/!skip)*_$_tempa3
       matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempc,!row+!nn3-1,!col-!skip+!ij4)
       next
     endif
```

endif

```
'The bd method takes account of only two own-derivative elements --
        'one on the diagonal and one on the first super diagonal. The latter is
        'important for one-lead euler equations.
        'there is some crude coding here, reflecting the fact that the full column
        'of the derivatives matrix has already been filled in and needs to be
        'zeroed out
         if (%jinit = "bd") and (_{\frac{1}{2}}dvec(!ij2) = 5) and (!ij1=!ij3) then
           matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,0*_$_mce_targ_dvec,1,!col)
           !diag = _$_tempa(!bd_col,1)
           vector(!nqtrs-1) _$_tempb = _$_tempa(!bd_col-1,1)
           'vector(!nqtrs-1) _$_tempb1 = _$_tempa(!bd_col+1,1)
           matrix(!nqtrs,!nqtrs) _$_tempc
           matrix _$_tempc = !diag*@identity(!nqtrs) + @makediagonal(_$_tempb,1)
           'matrix _$_tempc = !diag*@identity(!nqtrs) + @makediagonal(_$_tempb,1) +
           _$_tempc = @inverse(_$_tempc)
           matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempc,!row,!row)
           endif
          next
         !skip = 0
         endif
       endif
     next
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
 delete(noerr) _$_tempa _$_tempb _$_tempc _$_tempd
 'recalculate current solution
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 {\%_{mod_b}.solve}
 {\%_{mod_f}.solve}
, ********************
' invert derivative matrix (unless using bd method, in which case
' it's already inverted)
 if %jinit <> "bd" then
```

```
statusline inverting MCE derivative matrix
_$_mce_der_mat = @inverse(_$_mce_der_mat)
endif
```

### endsub

Defines:

 ${\tt mcz\_derivs},$  used in chunks 103 and 105.

# 6.2.11 model consistent coefficient non-monotone step-length procedure

122  $\langle model\ consistent\ coefficient\ non-monotone\ step-length\ procedure\ 122 \rangle \equiv$  (211) subroutine mcz\_lmr

```
%mcz_lmr = "ok"
!step_pos = !mcz_step
!step_neg = !mcz_step
%line_converge = "no"
!nk = _{mce_loss_vec(1)/(!mcetry)^2}
!loss_prev = _$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
if !mhistory >= (!mcetry-1) then
  vector losshist = @subextract(_$_mce_loss_vec,1,1,!mcetry-1,1)
  else
  vector losshist = @subextract(_$_mce_loss_vec,!mcetry-!mhistory,1,!mcetry-1,1)
!fkbar = @max(losshist)
for !j = 1 to !mcelinemax
  if !j > 1 then
    !mcz_step = !step_pos
    call mcz_solvit
    if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
      %mcz_lmr = "err"
      return
      endif
    endif
  if !nloss <= (!fkbar + !nk - !gammak*!step_pos^2*!loss_prev) then
    %line_converge = "yes"
    exitloop
    else
    !nloss_pos = !nloss
    !mcz_step = -!step_neg
    call mcz_solvit
    if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
      %mcz_lmr = "err"
      return
      endif
    if !nloss <= (!fkbar + !nk - !gammak*!step_neg^2*!loss_prev) then
      %line_converge = "yes"
      exitloop
      endif
    !nloss_neg = !nloss
    endif
  !alphat = !step_pos^2*!loss_prev/(!nloss_pos + (2*!step_pos-1)*!loss_prev)
```

```
if !alphat < (!tmin*!step_pos) then</pre>
        !step_pos = !tmin*!step_pos
        else
        if !alphat > !tmax*!step_pos then
          !step_pos = !tmax*!step_pos
          !step_pos = !alphat
          endif
        {\tt endif}
      !alphat = !step_neg^2*!loss_prev/(!nloss_neg + (2*!step_neg-1)*!loss_prev)
      if !alphat < (!tmin*!step_neg) then</pre>
        !step_neg = !tmin*!step_neg
        if !alphat > !tmax*!step_neg then
          !step_neg = !tmax*!step_neg
          else
          !step_neg = !alphat
          endif
        endif
      next
    setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,5,!j,0)
  endsub
Defines:
  mcz_lmr, used in chunk 105.
Uses mcz_solvit 114.
```

# 6.2.12 model consistent armijo optimization rule

```
\langle model\ consistent\ armijo\ optimization\ rule\ 124 \rangle \equiv
124
                                                                                (211)
         subroutine mcz_armijo
            %mcz_armijo = "ok"
            !iarm = 0
            while ((!nloss > (1-.01*!mcz_step)*!loss_prev) and !iarm < !mcelinemax)
              !mcz_step = !lrat * !mcz_step
              call mcz_solvit
              if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
                 %mcz_armijo = "err"
                return
                 {\tt endif}
              !iarm = !iarm + 1
            setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,5,!iarm,0)
         {\tt endsub}
       Defines:
         mcz_armijo, used in chunk 105.
       Uses mcz_solvit 114.
```

### 6.2.13 variable terminal values

endif

```
\langle variable\ terminal\ values\ 125 \rangle \equiv
125
                                                                          (211)
         subroutine mcz_terminal
         ' Set terminal values for all variables in _$_mod_f that might
         ' appear with leads, based on the simulated values of the corresponding
         ' variables in _$_mod_b at the end of the simulation period.
         ' Terminal values of stationary variables equal their last simulated
         ' level. Terminal values of nonstationary are based on extrapolating their
         ' simulated growth rates.
         ' This subroutine is usually called only once per MCE simulation and only
         ' for MCE simulations of permanent shocks. Multiple calls to this
         ' subroutine may result in convergence problems as a result of terminal
         ' values that drift from iteration to iteration.
         ' %fvars (variables that are exogenous in _$_mod_f and
         ' also endogenous in _$_mod_b)
           {%_$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_fvars_sols {%fvars}
           for !ijj = 1 to @wcount(%fvars)
             %tmpa = @lower(@word(%fvars,!ijj))
             %tmpb = _$_fvars_sols.@seriesname(!ijj)
             smpl %mceend + 8 %mceend + 8
             !tmpmean = @abs(@mean({%tmpa}))
             if !tmpmean > .001 then
               series _$\_tmpgrowth = @abs(@movav(d({\%tmpa},0,1)/{\%tmpa}(-1),8))
               else
               series _$_tmpgrowth = 0
               endif
             !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth)
             if (!tmpscal < .001) then
                'stationary case
               smpl %mceend + 1 @last
               {\text{\tt \{\%tmpb\}}} = {\text{\tt \{\%tmpb\}}}(-1)
               else
                'nonstationary case
               smpl %mceend %mceend
               series _{\frac{1}{2}}tmpgrowth = @movav(d({\%tmpb},0,1)/{\%tmpb}(-1),8)
                !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth) + 1
               smpl %mceend + 1 @last
               {\text{tmpb}} = {\text{tmpscal}} *{\text{tmpb}} (-1)
```

```
{\text{mpa}} = {\text{mpb}}
      next
  ' mcevars_f (mce variables in _$_mod_f, if any) have terminal conditions
  ' based on the values of mcevars_b (proxies for mce variables in _$_mod_b)
    if @wcount(%mcevars_f) > 0 then
      {%_$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_mcevars_b_sols {{%mcevars_b}}
      %mcevars_f1 = {%mcevars_f}
      for !ijj = 1 to @wcount(%mcevars_f1)
        %tmpa = @lower(@word(%mcevars_f1,!ijj))
        %tmpb = _$_mcevars_b_sols.@seriesname(!ijj)
        smpl %mceend + 8 %mceend + 8
        !tmpmean = @abs(@mean({%tmpa}))
        if !tmpmean > .001 then
          series _$\_tmpgrowth = @abs(@movav(d({\%tmpa},0,1)/{\%tmpa}(-1),8))
          series _$_tmpgrowth = 0
          endif
        !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth)
        if (!tmpscal < .001) then
          'stationary case
          smpl %mceend + 1 @last
          {\text{\tt \{\%tmpb\}}} = {\text{\tt \{\%tmpb\}}}(-1)
          else
          'nonstationary case
          smpl %mceend %mceend
          series _$tmpgrowth = @movav(d({\%tmpb},0,1)/{\%tmpb}(-1),8)
          !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth) + 1
          smpl %mceend + 1 @last
          {\text{tmpb}} = \text{tmpscal}*{\text{tmpb}}(-1)
          endif
        smpl %mceend + 1 %mceend + 8
        {\text{mpa}} = {\text{mpb}}
        next
      endif
    mce_sim_text.append Terminal conditions set at iteration {!mcetry}
  ' once terminal conditions have been set once, turn the switch that
  ' calls this subroutine off
    %terminal = "no"
  endsub
Defines:
  mcz_terminal, used in chunk 114.
```

## 6.2.14 set options based on defaults and overrides

%qpswitch = "r"

```
\langle set\ options\ based\ on\ defaults\ and\ overrides\ 127 \rangle \equiv
127
                                                                   (211)
        subroutine mcz_opt_setup(string mcz_opt_options, group mcz_opt_instrus, group mcz_opt_targs, te
          statusline mcz_opt_setup
        ' set up values of options based on defaults and overrides in string mcz_opt_options
          mcz_opt_options = @lower(mcz_opt_options)
          mcz_opt_options = @replace(mcz_opt_options," ","")
          mcz_opt_options = @replace(mcz_opt_options,","," ")
          mcz_opt_options = " " + mcz_opt_options + " "
        ' default values for options
          if %simtype <> "opttc" then
            !optmaxiter = 15
            !optconv = 1e-05
            else
            !optmaxiter = 50
            !optconv = 1e-06
            !tcdamp = 1
            endif
          !optlinemax = 10
          !optptrb = .01
          !opt_step_max = 1.0
          !optshow = 3
          !mceshow = 3
          %evlstart = %mcestart
          %drvstart = %mcestart
          %freq = @pagefreq
          %evlend = @datestr(@dateadd(@dateval(%evlstart),59,%freq))
          %drvend = @datestr(@dateadd(@dateval(%drvstart),39,%freq))
          %ideriv = "yes"
          %xopen = "yes"
          %xclose = "yes"
        ' if imposing constraints (mcz_opt_qp)
```

```
' are there overrides to defaults?
 if @len(mcz_opt_options) > 0 then
   %opts = "yes"
   else
   %opts = "no"
   endif
 if %opts = "yes" then
   call mcz_equalopt("m",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     !optmaxiter = @val(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("d",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     !tcdamp = @val(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("c",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     !optconv = @val(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("lmax",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     !optlinemax = @val(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("p",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     !optptrb = @val(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("stepmax",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     !optstepmax = @val(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("oo",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     !optshow = @val(%temp)
     !mceshow = @val(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("lstart",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %evlstart = @lower(%temp)
   call mcz_equalopt("lend",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %evlend = @lower(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("istart",mcz_opt_options)
```

<sup>,</sup> \*

```
if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %drvstart = @lower(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("iend",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %drvend = @lower(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("ideriv",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %ideriv = @lower(%temp)
   call mcz_hasopt("terminal",mcz_opt_options)
   if !hasflag = 1 then
     %terminal = "yes"
     endif
   call mcz_hasopt("matlab",mcz_opt_options)
   if !hasflag = 1 then
     %qpswitch = "matlab"
     endif
   call mcz_hasopt("/xopen",mcz_opt_options)
   if !hasflag = 1 then
     %xopen = "no"
     endif
   call mcz_hasopt("/xclose",mcz_opt_options)
   if !hasflag = 1 then
     %xclose = "no"
     endif
   endif
' Some preliminaries
' copy group subroutine arguments into objects with fixed names so that they can be
' easily accessed by other subroutines
 copy mcz_opt_instrus
                       _$_opt_instrus
 copy mcz_opt_targs
                        _$_opt_targs
 smpl %evlstart %evlend
 !nevl = @obssmpl
 smpl %drvstart %drvend
 !ndrv = @obssmpl
```

```
' Examine the inequality constraints, put them in a table,
' and, if necessary, augment the list of target variables to
' include all constraint variables
 if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
   svector _$_opt_cnstr = mcz_opt_cnstr.@svectornb
   !nconstraints = @rows(_$_opt_cnstr)
   if !nconstraints > 0 then
     table(1,1) _$_opt_cnstr_tab
     string _$_opt_cnstr_vars = " "
     call mcz_constraints(_$_opt_cnstr,_$_opt_cnstr_tab,_$_opt_cnstr_vars)
     %extra_targets = @wnotin(@upper(_$_opt_cnstr_vars),_$_opt_targs.@members)
     %extra_targets = @wunique(%extra_targets)
     !nextra = @wcount(%extra_targets)
     if !nextra > 0 then
       for !qq = 1 to !nextra
         %newtarg = @word(%extra_targets,!qq)
         _$_opt_targs.add {%newtarg}
         %newtarg_t = %newtarg + "_t"
         %newtarg_w = %newtarg + "_w"
         smpl @all
         series {%newtarg_t} = 0
         series {%newtarg_w} = 0
         next
       endif
     else
     @uiprompt("Error: The cnstr keyword is assigned to an empty text file")
     stop
     endif
   endif
' More preliminaries
  !noptinstrus = _$_opt_instrus.@count
  !nopttargs = _$_opt_targs.@count
  !topttargs = !nopttargs * !nevl
 !toptinstrus = !noptinstrus * !ndrv
 if !topttargs < !toptinstrus then
   statusline Error: more instruments than targets
   stop
   endif
 matrix _$_opt_ptrb_mat = @filledmatrix(!ndrv,!noptinstrus,!optptrb)
```

```
vector(!optmaxiter+1) _$_opt_loss_vec
 if %ideriv <> "no" then
   matrix _$_opt_der_mat = @filledmatrix(!toptinstrus,!topttargs,0)
 %opt_targ_names = _$_opt_targs.@members
 %opt_des_names = @wcross(%opt_targ_names,"_t")
 group _$_opt_des {%opt_des_names}
 smpl %evlstart %evlend
 matrix _$_opt_des_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_des))
' if number of instruments and targets is the same, the optimal loss is zero,
' shortcut formulas can be used, and weights are not necessary
 if !toptinstrus = !topttargs then
   !zero_loss = 1
   matrix _$_opt_wt_mat = @identity(!topttargs)
   else
   !zero_loss = 0
   smpl %evlstart %evlend
   %opt_wt_names = @wcross(%opt_targ_names,"_w")
   group _$_opt_wts {%opt_wt_names}
   matrix _$_opt_wt_mat = @makediagonal(@vec(@convert(_$_opt_wts)))
   endif
' text file
 text mce_opt_text
 if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
   mce_opt_text.append constrained optimization using {%qpswitch}: xopen = {%xopen}; xclose =
   else
   mce_opt_text.append unconstrained optimization (EViews)
   endif
 if %simtype = "opt" then
   mce_opt_text.append optimization type = committment
   mce_opt_text.append simulation period: {%mcestart} - {%mceend}
   mce_opt_text.append loss evalation period: {%evlstart} - {%evlend}
   mce_opt_text.append instrument setting period: {%drvstart} - {%drvend}
   mce_opt_text.append max number of optimization iterations = !optmaxiter
   mce_opt_text.append max number of line search steps per iteration = !optlinemax
   endif
```

```
if %simtype = "opttc" then
   mce_opt_text.append optimization type = time-consistent nash (discretion)
   mce_opt_text.append first instrument setting period: {%drvstart}
   mce_opt_text.append first simulation period: {%mcestart} - {%mceend}
   mce_opt_text.append first loss evalation period: {%evlstart} - {%evlend}
   mce_opt_text.append last instrument setting period: {%drvend}
   mce_opt_text.append max number of backward-induction iterations = !optmaxiter
   endif
 mce_opt_text.append convergence criteria = !optconv
 mce_opt_text.append output control parameter = !optshow
 mce_opt_text.append compute instrument derivs? = {%ideriv}
 mce_opt_text.append instrument perturbation factor = !optptrb
' table of iteration-by-iteration statistics
 if @isobject("mce_opt_stats") then
   delete mce_opt_stats
   endif
 table(!optmaxiter+2,7) mce_opt_stats
 mce_opt_stats.setwidth(1:1) 5
 mce_opt_stats.setwidth(1:5) 12
 mce_opt_stats.setlines(a2:g2) +b
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,1,"iter")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,2,"f(x)")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,3,"step size")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,4,"convergence")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,2,4,"statistic")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,5,"linearity")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,2,5,"statistic")
' call appropriate optimization subroutine
 if %simtype = "opt" and %cnstrflag = "no" then
   call mcz_opt
   endif
 if %simtype = "opt" and %cnstrflag = "yes" then
   call mcz_opt_qp
   endif
 if %simtype = "opttc" then
   call mcz_opt_tc
   endif
```

```
if @isobject("mce_opt_spool") then
     delete mce_opt_spool
     endif
   spool mce_opt_spool
   if %simtype = "opt" then
     mce_opt_spool.append mce_opt_stats
     mce_opt_spool.append mce_opt_text
     mce_opt_spool.name untitled01 mce_opt_stats
     mce_opt_spool.name untitled02 mce_opt_text
     endif
   if %simtype = "opttc" then
     mce_opt_spool.append mce_opt_text
     mce_opt_spool.name untitled01 mce_opt_text
     endif
   if !optshow <> 4 then
     show mce_opt_spool
     close mce_opt_stats
     endif
   if %cleanup = "yes" then
     delete(noerr) _$_*
     endif
   endsub
Defines:
 mcz_opt_setup, used in chunk 88.
Uses mcz_constraints 155, mcz_equalopt 102a, mcz_hasopt 102b, mcz_opt 134,
 {\tt mcz\_opt\_qp~138,~and~mcz\_opt\_tc~143.}
```

## 6.2.15 main unconstrained optimal control simulation

```
\langle main\ unconstrained\ optimal\ control\ simulation\ 134 \rangle \equiv
134
                                                        (211)
       subroutine mcz_opt
       'Main subroutine for unconstrained optimal control simulations
       ' initialize counters and switches
        !opttry = 0
        %opt_converge = "no"
        !optnonlin = 0
        !optpchloss = 100
       ' initial solution
        smpl %mcestart %mceend
        !opt_step = 0
        !opt_step_prev = 0
        call mcz_opt_solve
        if !opttry = 0 and !optloss = 0 then
          %opt_converge = "yes"
          mce_opt_text.append At iteration {!opttry}, convergence
          endif
       ' iterate to minimize loss
        smpl %mcestart %mceend
        while !opttry <= !optmaxiter and %opt_converge = "no"</pre>
          !opttry = !opttry + 1
        , ******************
        ' compute instrument derivatives, hessian, gradient, direction, and
        ' predicted loss assuming the model is linear
          if (%ideriv <> "no" and (!opttry = 1 or @abs(!optnonlin) > .1)) then
           call mcz_opt_deriv
           endif
          if !zero_loss = 0 then
```

```
matrix _$_opt_hess = 2*_$_opt_der_mat*_$_opt_wt_mat*@transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)
   matrix _$_opt_hess = 2*@transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)
   endif
  if @issingular(_$_opt_hess) = 1 then
   %errstring = "Hessian is singular at iteration " + @str(!opttry)
   @uiprompt(%errstring)
   stop
   endif
 matrix _$_opt_hessinv = @inverse(_$_opt_hess)
  if !zero_loss = 0 then
   matrix _$_opt_grad = 2*_$_opt_der_mat*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec
   matrix _$_opt_grad = 2*_$_opt_gap_vec
   endif
 vector _$_opt_direction = _$_opt_hessinv*_$_opt_grad
  matrix _$_opt_gap_vec_p = _$_opt_gap_vec - @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat) * _$_opt_direction
  !optloss_p = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec_p)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec_p)
, ************
' solve model and compute loss
  !opt_step = !opt_step_max
  !opt_step_prev = 0
 call mcz_opt_solve
<sup>,</sup> **********************
' test for nonlinearity
'!optnonlin is the ratio of the actual to predicted percentage reduction in loss less 1.0;
' the closer the model is to being linear, the closer !optnonlin is to zero
  !ddloss = (_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry)-_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1))
  if !ddloss <> 0 then
    !optnonlin = (_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1)-!optloss_p) / !ddloss
   else
    !optnonlin = 100
   endif
 mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,5) = !optnonlin
<sup>,</sup> **********************
' Search for a better a step size (Armijo condition and backtracking)
  !opt_loss_dderiv = -@transpose(_$_opt_grad)*_$_opt_direction
  !kk = .01
  !iarm = 0
 while (_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1) > _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry) + !kk*!opt_step*!opt_loss_dden
   and !iarm < !optlinemax
   !iarm = !iarm + 1
    !opt_step_prev = !opt_step
```

```
!opt_step = .5*!opt_step
   call mcz_opt_solve
   wend
, *****************
' Test for convergence
 if !zero_loss = 1 then
  ' equal number of targets and controls, full rank derivative matrix
 ' => loss has to be less than !optconv
   mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,4) = _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1)
   if _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1) < !optconv then</pre>
     %opt_converge = "yes"
     endif
   else
 '!zero_loss = 0 => percentage change in loss from previous iteration has
  ' to be less than !optconv
   !optpchloss = 1-(_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1)/_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry))
   mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,4) = !optpchloss
   if !optpchloss < !optconv then
     %opt_converge = "yes"
     mce_opt_text.append At iteration {!opttry}, convergence
     endif
   endif
 if !opttry = 1 and @abs(!optnonlin) < 1e-7 and !opt_step = 1 then
   %opt_converge = "yes"
   mce_opt_text.append At iteration 1, convergence assumed because model is linear
   endif
 if !opttry = !optmaxiter then
   mce_opt_text.append At iteration {!opttry}, no convergence in {!optmaxiter} ite
   !continue = @uiprompt("Maximum number of optimization iterations reached: Con-
   if !continue = 2 then
     stop
     else
     %opt_converge = "yes"
     endif
   endif
 if !optshow <> 4 then
   show mce_opt_stats
   endif
 wend
```

## endsub

Defines:

mcz\_opt, used in chunk 127.
Uses mcz\_opt\_deriv 151 and mcz\_opt\_solve 153.

## main optimal control simulation with inequality constraints

```
\langle main\ optimal\ control\ simulation\ with\ inequality\ constraints\ 138 \rangle \equiv
138
                                                                        (211)
         subroutine mcz_opt_qp
         ' Main subroutine for optimal control simulations with inequality constraints
         ' (requires either R or matlab)
         ' The original problem:
             choose x to minimize z = (y-y*)'W(y-y*)
            under the constraint Cy >= c
            where at each iteration the linearized relationship between
            the target variables (y) and instrument variables (x) is
            given by
            y = B'x + k
         ' The transformed problem: Solve out y
             choose x to minimize z = x'BWB'x + 2(k-y*)'WB'x + const
            under the constraint CB'x >= c - Ck
         'The R command -- quadprog::solve.QP(D,d,A,b) -- solves
            min [0.5 * x' D x - d'x] with the constraint A'x >= b
         'The matlab command -- x = quadprog(D,d,A,b) -- solves
            min [0.5 * x' D x + d'x] with the constraint Ax <= b
                       R
                                      matlab
                   2BWB'
            D
                                      same
                                     -2(k-y*)'WB'
             ď,
                   2(k-y*)'WB'
                   CB'
                                     -CB,
             Α,
                   c-Ck
                                     -(c-Ck)
             where k = y - B'x
         <sup>,</sup> *****************************
```

<sup>&#</sup>x27;Create constraint matrices (C,c)-- dimensions are based on the number ' of periods in which the instruments are set (!ndrv) not the number of

```
' periods in which the loss function is evaluated (!nevl)
 if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
   matrix(!nevl * !nconstraints,!nevl*!nopttargs) _$_opt_cnstr_mat = 0
   matrix(!nevl * !nconstraints,1) _$_opt_cnstr_vec = 0
   for !i = 1 to !nconstraints
     !nterms = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,1))
     for !k = 1 to !nterms
      %var = @upper(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k))
       !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k+1))
       !j = @wfindnc(%opt_targ_names,%var)
      for !l = 1 to !nevl
        _{\text{opt\_cnstr\_mat}((!i-1)*!nevl+!l,(!j-1)*!nevl+!l)} = !coef
      next
     for !1 = 1 to !nevl
       !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!nterms+2))
       _{\text{sopt\_cnstr\_vec}((!i-1)*!nevl+!l)} = !coef
      next
     next
   else
   !nconstraints = 1
   matrix(!nevl,!nevl*!nopttargs) _$_opt_cnstr_mat = 0
   matrix(!nevl,1) _$_opt_cnstr_vec = 0
   endif
' initialize counters and switches
 !opttry = 0
 %opt_converge = "no"
 !optnonlin = 0
 !optpchloss = 100
 if %qpswitch = "r" and %xopen = "yes" then
   xopen(type=r, case=lower)
   endif
 if %qpswitch = "matlab" and %xopen = "yes" then
   xopen(type=m, case=lower)
   endif
' compute an initial solution, without reference to any constraints
```

```
smpl %mcestart %mceend
 !opt\_step = 0
 !opt_step_prev = 0
 call mcz_opt_solve
' iterate to minimize loss
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 while !opttry <= !optmaxiter and %opt_converge = "no"</pre>
   !opttry = !opttry + 1
  <sup>,</sup> **********************
 ' compute instrument derivatives
   if %ideriv <> "no" then
     call mcz_opt_deriv
     endif
  , *****************
  ' compute qp matrices
   smpl %drvstart %drvend
   vector _$_opt_instru_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_instrus))
   matrix _$_qp_k_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec-@transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)*_$_opt_instru_vec
   matrix qp_d_mat = 2 * _$_opt_der_mat * _$_opt_wt_mat * @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)
   matrix qp_d_vec = -2 * _$_opt_der_mat*@transpose(_$_opt_wt_mat) _
                     * (_$_qp_k_vec - _$_opt_des_vec)
   matrix qp_a_mat = @transpose(_$_opt_cnstr_mat * @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat))
   matrix qp_b_vec = _$_opt_cnstr_vec - _$_opt_cnstr_mat _
                    * (_$_qp_k_vec - _$_opt_des_vec)
   if !ndrv <> !nevl then
     qp_a_mat = @subextract(qp_a_mat,1,1,!ndrv,!ndrv)
     qp_b_vec = @subextract(qp_b_vec,1,1,!ndrv,1)
     endif
   xput qp_d_mat qp_a_mat qp_d_vec qp_b_vec
 , *****************
 <sup>,</sup> *********************
 ' R code
   if %qpswitch = "r" then
     if ((!ndrv = 1) and (!noptinstrus = 1)) then
       xrun "dim(qp_d_mat) <- c(1,1);"</pre>
```

```
xrun "dim(qp_a_mat) <- c(1,1);"</pre>
     xrun "dim(qp_b_vec) <- c(1,1);"</pre>
   xrun "QP.results <- quadprog::solve.QP(qp_d_mat,qp_d_vec,qp_a_mat,qp_b_vec);"</pre>
   xrun "r_xhat <- QP.results$solution;"</pre>
   xrun "r_xhat <- as.matrix(r_xhat);"</pre>
   xget(type = matrix, name = _$_qp_instru_vec) r_xhat
   endif
, *****************
, *********************
' matlab code
 if %qpswitch = "matlab" then
   xrun "qp_d_vec = -qp_d_vec;"
   xrun "qp_a_mat = -qp_a_mat';"
   xrun "qp_b_vec = -qp_b_vec;"
   xrun "aeq = [];"
   xrun "beq = [];"
   xrun "lb = [];"
   xrun "ub = [];"
   xrun "xx0 = [];"
   xrun "options = optimset('Algorithm', 'active-set', 'LargeScale', 'off');"
   xrun "matlab_xhat = quadprog(qp_d_mat,qp_d_vec,qp_a_mat,qp_b_vec,aeq,beq,lb,ub,xx0,option
   xget matlab_xhat
   %tmp = matlab_xhat.@type
   if %tmp = "SCALAR" then
     matrix(1,1) _$_qp_instru_vec = matlab_xhat
     matrix _$_qp_instru_vec = matlab_xhat
     delete matlab_xhat
     endif
   endif
, ****************
, ******************
' values of target variables in qp (linearized) solution
 matrix _$_qp_targ_vec = @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)*_$_qp_instru_vec + _$_qp_k_vec
' values of target variables in original model
 smpl %drvstart %drvend
 matrix _$_tt1 = @unvec(@vec(_$_qp_instru_vec),!ndrv)
 mtos(_$_tt1,_$_opt_instrus)
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
```

```
call mcz_sim(" ")
      smpl %evlstart %evlend
      matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
      matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
      !optloss = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
      setcell(mce_opt_stats,!opttry+2,1,!opttry,0)
    ' convergence test is based on the maximum difference between
    ' the target variable values in the linearized and original models
      !conv_stat = @max(abs(_$_qp_targ_vec-_$_opt_targ_vec))
      mce_opt_stats(!opttry+2,2) = !optloss
      mce_opt_stats(!opttry+2,4) = !conv_stat
      if !optshow <> 4 then
        show mce_opt_stats
        endif
      if !conv_stat < !optconv then</pre>
        %opt_converge = "yes"
        else
        endif
      wend
    delete(noerr) qp_d_mat qp_a_mat qp_d_vec qp_b_vec
  endsub
Defines:
 mcz_opt_qp, used in chunks 86 and 127.
Uses mcz_opt_deriv 151, mcz_opt_solve 153, and mcz_sim 105.
```

## 6.2.17 model consistent optimal time-consistent solution

```
\langle model\ consistent\ optimal\ time-consistent\ solution\ 143 \rangle \equiv
143
                                                                      (211)
        subroutine mcz_opt_tc
        ' 1. For a linear model, this code finds the exact time-consistent solution;
             for a nonlinear model, the calculated solution is based on the
             linearization of the model as given by the derivatives of the target
             variables wrt the instrument variables along the baseline.
         ' 2. The basic data matrices include observations for (!nevl+!ndrv-1) periods,
             which is also the interval over which tracking adds are required.
        '3. The simulation, derivative and evaluation periods are assumed to have the
             same starting date
        ' 4. The solution method is backward induction; if there are no inequality constraints,
             the method executes in EViews (using matrices); if inequality constraints
             are present, the method executes in EViews if there is a single
             instrument and in Matlab or R (depending on the
             setting of a switch) if there are multiple instruments (which requires
             a quadratic programming algorithm),
        , **************
         ' Create constraint matrices (C,c) -- dimensions are based on the fact that
         ' each policymaker sets the instruments for a single period
          if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
            matrix(!nconstraints,!nopttargs) _$_opt_cnstr_mat = 0
            matrix(!nconstraints,1) _$_opt_cnstr_vec = 0
            for !i = 1 to !nconstraints
               !nterms = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,1))
              for !k = 1 to !nterms
                %var = @upper(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k))
                !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k+1))
                !j = @wfindnc(%opt_targ_names,%var)
                _$_opt_cnstr_mat(!i,!j) = !coef
                next
               !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!nterms+2))
              _$_opt_cnstr_vec(!i) = !coef
              next
```

endif

```
' initial solution, instrument derivatives, and data matrices
' initial simulation
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 if %terminal = "yes" then
   call mcz_sim("terminal")
   %terminal = "no"
   else
   call mcz_sim(" ")
   endif
 {%_$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_opt_targs_sols {%opt_targ_names}
 !ntot = !ndrv + !nevl - 1
' derivative matrices and submatrices
'_$_opt_der_mat (this is the basic matrix; tc_dmat is its transpose)
'tc_dmat
          effect of !ndrv periods of instruments on !ntot periods of targets
'tc_dmat_short effect of !ndrv periods of instruments on !nevl periods of targets
'tc_dmat1 effect of period 1 instrument on !nevl periods of targets
'tc_dmat2
               effect of period 1 instrument on period 1 targets
 if %ideriv <> "no" then
   !opttry = 1
   matrix _$_opt_der_mat = @filledmatrix(!toptinstrus,!nopttargs*!ntot,0)
   %evlend_b = %evlend
   %freq = Opagefreq
   !ntot1 = !ntot-1
   %evlend = @datestr(@dateadd(@dateval(%simstart),!ntot1,%freq))
   'call dateshift(%simstart,%evlend,!ntot-1)
   call mcz_opt_deriv
   %evlend = %evlend_b
   matrix tc_dmat = @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)
   matrix tc_dmat_short = @filledmatrix(!nevl*!nopttargs,!ndrv*!noptinstrus,0)
   for !i = 1 to !toptinstrus
     for !j = 1 to !nopttargs
       !r1 = !ntot*(!j-1)+1
       !r2 = !r1 + !nev1 - 1
       matplace(tc_dmat_short,@subextract(tc_dmat,!r1,!i,!r2,!i),!nevl*(!j-1)+1,!i)
       next
     next
   matrix tc_dmat1 = @filledmatrix(!nevl*!nopttargs,!noptinstrus,0)
   for !i = 1 to !noptinstrus
     matplace(tc_dmat1,@columnextract(tc_dmat_short,(!i-1)*!ndrv+1),1,!noptinstrus)
   matrix tc_dmat2 = @filledmatrix(!noptinstrus,!nopttargs,0)
   for !i = 1 to !noptinstrus
```

```
for !j = 1 to !nopttargs
       tc_{dmat2}(!i,!j) = tc_{dmat1}((!j-1)*!nevl+1,!i)
     next
   {\tt endif}
' initial simulation again (is this necessary)
 call mcz_sim(" ")
' data matrices
 smpl %simstart {%evlend} + !ndrv - 1
 stom(_$_opt_targs_sols,tc_ymat)
 stom(_$_opt_des,tc_ystarmat)
 stom(_$_opt_instrus,tc_xmat)
 matrix tc_wmat = _$_opt_wt_mat
' (no constraints) => eviews;
' (1 constraint -- single period) => eviews
' (multiple constraints) => R or Matlab
 if %cnstrflag = "no" then
   %iii = "eviews"
   else
   if !noptinstrus = 1 then
     %iii = "eviews"
     else
     %iii = %qpswitch
     endif
   endif
 scalar tc_iter = 0
 scalar tc_stat = 100
 scalar tc_itmax = !optmaxiter
 scalar tc_conv = !optconv
' unconstrained backward induction => EViews
 if %cnstrflag = "no" then
   while (tc_stat > tc_conv) and tc_iter <= tc_itmax</pre>
     matrix tc_xb = tc_xmat
     matrix tc_yb = tc_ymat
     for !i = !ndrv to 1 step -1
       !n1 = !i+!nevl-1
```

!n2 = !i+!ndrv-1

```
vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
      vector tc_ys0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ystarmat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
      vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
      vector tc_x0_1v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!i,!noptinstrus))
      vector tc_xbv = @vec(@subextract(tc_xb,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
      vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat_short*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
      matrix tc_g = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*(tc_y1v-tc_ys0v)
      matrix tc_h = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*tc_dmat1
      vector tc_x1_1v = tc_x0_1v - !tcdamp*@inverse(tc_h)*tc_g
      matrix tc_x1_1 = @unvec(tc_x1_1v,!noptinstrus)
      matplace(tc_xmat,tc_x1_1,!i,1)
      next
     vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,1,1,!ndrv,!noptinstrus))
     vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,1,1,!ntot,!nopttargs))
     vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
     matrix tc_y1 = @unvec(tc_y1v,!ntot)
     matplace(tc_ymat,tc_y1,1,1)
     tc_iter = tc_iter + 1
     if tc_iter > 1 then
      tc_stat = @max(@abs(tc_xmat-tc_xmatprev))
      endif
     matrix tc_xmatprev = tc_xmat
     wend
   endif
' constrained backward induction
 if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
   matrix tc_cmat = _$_opt_cnstr_mat
   matrix tc_cvec = _$_opt_cnstr_vec
 ' single-period constraint => eviews
   if %iii = "eviews" then
     statusline constrained TC optimization in EViews
```

```
matrix mat_a = tc_dmat2*@transpose(tc_cmat)
while (tc_stat > tc_conv) and tc_iter <= tc_itmax</pre>
 matrix tc_xb = tc_xmat
 matrix tc_yb = tc_ymat
  for !i = !ndrv to 1 step -1
    !n1 = !i+!nevl-1
    !n2 = !i+!ndrv-1
  ' vectors of observations in the current loss and instrument periods
    vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
    vector tc_ys0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ystarmat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
    vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
    vector tc_x0_1v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!i,!noptinstrus))
    vector tc_xbv = @vec(@subextract(tc_xb,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
  ' vector of target variable values based on current instrument values
  ' (ie, solve model)
    vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat_short*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
  ' unconstrained current optimal instrument value
    matrix tc_g = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*(tc_y1v-tc_ys0v)
   matrix tc_h = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*tc_dmat1
    vector tc_x1_1v = tc_x0_1v - @inverse(tc_h)*tc_g
  ' check constraint
    matrix tc_y1m = @unvec(tc_y1v,!nevl)
    matrix tc_ysm = @unvec(tc_ys0v,!nevl)
    matrix mattemp = @rowextract(tc_y1m,1) - (@transpose(tc_x0_1v)*tc_dmat2) - @rowextract
    matrix mat_b = tc_cvec - tc_cmat*@transpose(mattemp)
    scalar testit = @sum(mat_b)/@sum(mat_a)
    if @sum(tc_x1_1v) < testit then
     tc_x1_1v = testit
      !tc_iter = tc_iter
      endif
    vector tc_x1_1v = (1-!tcdamp)*tc_x0_1v + !tcdamp* tc_x1_1v
  ' place current optimal instrument value in instrument matrix
    matrix tc_x1_1 = @unvec(tc_x1_1v,!noptinstrus)
    matplace(tc_xmat,tc_x1_1,!i,1)
    next
```

```
' solve model
     vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,1,1,!ndrv,!noptinstrus))
     vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,1,1,!ntot,!nopttargs))
     vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
     matrix tc_y1 = @unvec(tc_y1v,!ntot)
     matplace(tc_ymat,tc_y1,1,1)
     tc_iter = tc_iter + 1
     if tc_iter > 1 then
       tc_stat = @max(@abs(tc_xmat-tc_xmatprev))
       endif
     matrix tc_xmatprev = tc_xmat
     wend
   endif
' multiple constraints => R or matlab
 if %iii = "r" or %iii = "matlab" then
   scalar tc_noptinstrus = !noptinstrus
   scalar tc_nopttargs = !nopttargs
   scalar tc_nevl = !nevl
   scalar tc_ndrv = !ndrv
   scalar tc_damp = !tcdamp
   if %xopen = "yes" then
     if %iii = "r" then
       xopen(type=r)
       xrun library("quadprog")
       %wd = """" + %rpath + """"
       xrun setwd({%wd})
       else
       xopen(type=m)
       xrun addpath {%mpath}
       endif
     endif
   xput tc_ymat tc_ystarmat tc_xmat tc_wmat tc_cmat tc_cvec
   xput tc_nopttargs tc_noptinstrus tc_nevl tc_ndrv tc_itmax tc_conv
   xput tc_dmat tc_dmat1 tc_dmat2 tc_dmat_short tc_damp
```

```
if %iii = "r" then
       xrun source("tcoc_r.R")
       else
       xrun tcoc_m
       endif
     xget tc_xmat
     xget tc_ymat
     xget tc_iter
     !tc_iter = tc_iter
     if %xclose = "yes" then
       xclose
       endif
     delete(noerr) tc_ystarmat tc_dmat tc_wmat tc_cmat tc_cvec
     delete(noerr) tc_nopttargs tc_noptinstrus tc_nevl tc_ndrv tc_conv
     delete(noerr) tc_damp tc_dmat1 tc_dmat2 tc_dmatshort
     endif
   endif
' examine linearized solution
 if tc_iter >= tc_itmax then
   @uiprompt("iteration limit reached: time-consistent iterations did not converge")
   'stop
   endif
' write instrument and target values back into their corresponding series
 smpl %evlstart {%evlstart} + !nevl + !ndrv - 2
 mtos(tc_xmat,_$_opt_instrus)
 mtos(tc_ymat,_$_opt_targs_sols)
' value of loss function for linearized solution
 smpl %evlstart %evlend
 matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
 matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
 !optloss_lin = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
 stom(_$_opt_targs_sols,tc_ymat_lin)
' simulate EViews model
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 call mcz_sim(" ")
 smpl %evlstart %evlend
```

```
stom(_$_opt_targs_sols,tc_ymat_ev)
!maxdiff = @max(@abs(tc_ymat_ev-tc_ymat_lin))
matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
!optloss_ev = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
!tciter = tc_iter
mce_opt_text.append time-consistent solution
mce_opt_text.append --- backward-induction iterations = !tciter
mce_opt_text.append --- TC damping factor = !tcdamp
mce_opt_text.append --- linearized solution loss = !optloss_lin
mce_opt_text.append --- EViews solution loss = !optloss_ev
mce_opt_text.append --- max diff btwn target vars in linear and EViews sols = !maxd
delete(noerr) tc_ymat tc_xmat tc_iter tc_ymat_lin tc_ymat_ev
delete(noerr) tc_itmax tc_stat
```

#### endsub

Defines:

mcz\_opt\_tc, used in chunks 86 and 127.

Uses dateshift 79, mcz\_opt\_deriv 151, and mcz\_sim 105.

# 6.2.18 compute derivatives of loss function targets wrt instruments

'restore the original values of the add factors on

```
151
      \langle compute\ derivatives\ of\ loss\ function\ targets\ wrt\ instruments\ 151 \rangle \equiv
                                                                      (211)
        subroutine mcz_opt_deriv
         ' requires that the following be defined
        '!optshow, mce_opt_stats, %evlstart, %evlend
        '_$_opt_targs_sols, !noptinstrus, _$_opt_instrus, !drv,
        ' _$_opt_ptrb_mat, _$_opt_der_mat
        ' This subroutine computes the derivatives of the loss function targets wrt the instruments
          smpl @all
           !optshow_bac = !optshow
           !optshow = 3
           'make a copy of the current values of the mce instruments;
           'they will be restored after each derivative is computed
          smpl %mcestart %mceend
          stom(_$_mce_instrus,_$_instrus_bac)
           'do not reset terminal conditions when computing derivatives
          %set_terminal = "no"
          smpl %evlstart %evlend
          matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
           'derivatives loop
          statusline computing instrument derivatives at optimization iteration !opttry
          for !zi = 1 to !noptinstrus
            %instru_name = _$_opt_instrus.@seriesname(!zi)
            for !zj = 1 to !ndrv
               !perturbit = _$_opt_ptrb_mat(!zj,!zi)
              smpl \mbox{\em mcestart} + !zj-1 \mbox{\em mcestart} + !zj-1
              {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} + !perturbit
              call mcz_sim(" ")
              smpl %evlstart %evlend
              matrix _$_opt_targ_dvec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
              matplace(_$_opt_der_mat,@transpose(_$_opt_targ_dvec-_$_opt_targ_vec)/!perturbit,(!zi-1)*!
              smpl %mcestart + !zj-1 %mcestart + !zj-1
              {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} - !perturbit
```

```
'the z variable equations
smpl %mcestart %mceend
mtos(_$_instrus_bac,_$_mce_instrus)
next
next
smpl %mcestart %mceend
!optshow = !optshow_bac
endsub
Defines:
mcz_opt_deriv, used in chunks 134, 138, and 143.
Uses mcz_sim 105.
```

### 6.2.19 solve model consistent expectations model

show mce\_opt\_stats

```
\langle solve\ model\ consistent\ expectations\ model\ 153 \rangle \equiv
153
                                                                       (211)
         subroutine mcz_opt_solve
         ' This subroutine first sets the instrument values, based on the current
         ' optimal direction and choice of step size, and then solves the model
          statusline optimization solution, iteration !opttry
          smpl %mcestart %mceend
           'compute instrument values based on current direction and step size
           if !opttry > 0 then
             mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,3) = !opt_step
             smpl %drvstart %drvend
             for !i = 1 to !noptinstrus
               vector _$_temp_adj = @subextract(_$_opt_direction,(!i-1)*!ndrv+1,1,!i*!ndrv,1)
               mtos(_$_temp_adj,_$_temp_ser)
               %y1 = _$_opt_instrus.@seriesname(!i)
               \{\%y1\} = \{\%y1\} - (!opt_step-!opt_step_prev)*_$_temp_ser
               next
             endif
           'solve model
           if !opttry = 0 and %terminal = "yes" then
             call mcz_sim("terminal")
             %terminal = "no"
             else
             call mcz_sim(" ")
             endif
          if !opttry = 0 then
             {%_$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_opt_targs_sols {%opt_targ_names}
             endif
           'compute value of loss function
          smpl %evlstart %evlend
          matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
          matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
           !optloss = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
          setcell(mce_opt_stats,!opttry+3,1,!opttry,0)
          mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,2) = !optloss
          _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1) = !optloss
          if !optshow = 2 then
```

 ${\tt endif}$ 

endsub

Defines:

mcz\_opt\_solve, used in chunks 134 and 138. Uses mcz\_sim 105.

## 6.2.20 convert mcz inequality constraints

```
\langle convert\ mcz\ inequality\ constraints\ 155 \rangle \equiv
155
                                                                       (211)
        subroutine local mcz_constraints(svector sss, table ctable, string cvarnames)
         'This subroutine converts the inequality constraint text into a table
         ' subroutine arguments:
        ' inputs:
            SSS
                                svector of constraint text
         ' outputs:
             _$_opt_cnstr_tab
                                   table of constraint variables and coefficients
             _$_opt_cnstr_vars
                                   string of names of variables in constraints
         , **********************
          !nconstraints = @rows(sss)
          scalar loc
          scalar sign
          for !i = 1 to !nconstraints
            %rrr = sss(!i)
           <sup>,</sup> ******************************
           <sup>,</sup> ******************************
           ' separate the left and right sides of each constraint
             !kk1 = @instr(%rrr,">=")
             if !kk1 = 0 then
               @uiprompt("each constraint must contain an "">="" term")
               stop
               endif
            %rrrl = @left(%rrr,!kk1-1)
             if @isempty(%rrrl) = 1 then
               @uiprompt("each constraint must contain terms to the left of "">=""")
               stop
               endif
            %rrrr = @mid(%rrr,!kk1+2)
             if @isempty(%rrrr) = 1 then
               @uiprompt("each constraint must contain a value to the right of "">=""")
               stop
```

endif

```
<sup>,</sup> *******************************
<sup>,</sup> *******************************
' process the left side of each constraint
' 1. split %rrrl into individual terms (based on + and - characters);
    the main challenge concerns the first term, which may or may not
    have a leading + or - attached
' 2. then split each term into 2 parts (based on * character)
' 3. then identify which part is coefficient and which is variable
  !zz = 0
             'flag to indicate end of left hand side of a constraint
  !nterms = 1
  vector(100) split_locs = 0
  vector(100) split_signs = 0
 %rrrlx = %rrrl
' find boundaries and signs of each term
 while !zz = 0
  ' first term: determine whether its sign is explicit or implicit
   if !nterms = 1 then
      call find_next_delimit(%rrrlx,loc,sign)
     if loc = 0 then
                                       'implicit leading sign
        split_locs(!nterms) = 0
        split_signs(!nterms) = 1
        else
        %rrrll = @left(%rrrlx,loc-1)
        if @isempty(%rrrll) = 1 then
                                       'explicit leading sign
          split_locs(!nterms) = loc
          split_signs(!nterms) = sign
          %rrrlx = @mid(%rrrlx,loc+1)
          else
                                       'implicit leading sign
          split_locs(!nterms) = 0
          split_signs(!nterms) = 1
          endif
        endif
      endif
   call find_next_delimit(%rrrlx,loc,sign)
   if loc = 0 then
                                     'last term
     split_locs(!nterms+1) = @length(%rrrlx)
     !zz = 1
     else
```

```
split_locs(!nterms+1) = loc
     split_signs(!nterms+1) = sign
     %rrrlx = @mid(%rrrlx,loc+1)
     endif
    !nterms = !nterms + 1
   wend
 for !k = 2 to !nterms
   split_locs(!k) = split_locs(!k-1) + split_locs(!k)
   next
  !nterms = !nterms - 1
' parse each term into coefficient times variable (they must
' appear in that order, although coefficients = 1 can be
' omitted), and store coefficient and variable in ctable
 for !k = 1 to !nterms
   %term = @mid(%rrrl,split_locs(!k)+1,split_locs(!k+1)-split_locs(!k)-1)
   if @isempty(%term) = 1 then
     @uiprompt("term is empty: illegal constraint specification")
     stop
     else
     !ii = @instr(%term,"*")
     if !ii > 0 then
       %coef = @left(%term,!ii-1)
       !coef = split_signs(!k) * @val(%coef)
       %var = @mid(%term,!ii+1)
       else
       !coef = split_signs(!k)
       %var = %term
       endif
     %var = @trim(%var)
     endif
   ctable(!i,2*!k) = %var
   ctable(!i,2*!k+1) = !coef
   cvarnames = cvarnames + " " + %var
   next
<sup>,</sup> *******************************
, ********************************
' process the right side of each constraint
```

```
June 19, 2016
       158
              frbuseview.nw
              ctable(!i,2*!nterms+2) = @val(%rrrr)
              ctable(!i,1) = !nterms
           next
           cvarnames = @wunique(cvarnames)
         endsub
       Defines:
         mcz_constraints, used in chunk 127.
       Uses find_next_delimit 159.
       6.2.21 shift left
       \langle shift\ left\ 158 \rangle \equiv
                                                                             (211)
158
         subroutine local shiftleft(vector abc, scalar nshift)
           !rows = @rows(abc)
           vector v1 = @subextract(abc,1,1,nshift,1)
           vector v2 = @subextract(abc,nshift+1,1,!rows,1)
           matplace(abc, v2,1)
           matplace(abc,v1,!rows - nshift + 1)
         endsub
       Defines:
```

shiftleft, used in chunk 105.

## 6.2.22 find next delimiter

```
\langle find\ next\ delimiter\ 159 \rangle \equiv
                                                                             (211)
159
         subroutine local find_next_delimit(string %instring,scalar loc,scalar sign)
            !ttp = @instr(%instring,"+")
            !ttm = @instr(%instring,"-")
            if !ttp= 0 or !ttm = 0 then
              loc = !ttp + !ttm
              if !ttp = 0 and !ttm = 0 then
                sign = 1
                else
                sign = (!ttp > 0) - (!ttm > 0)
                endif
              loc = !ttp*(!ttp < !ttm) + !ttm*(!ttm < !ttp)</pre>
              sign = (!ttp < !ttm) - (!ttm < !ttp)
            endif
         endsub
       Defines:
         find_next_delimit, used in chunk 155.
```

## 6.2.23 load frbus with transformed subsidiary model

```
\langle load\ frbus\ with\ transformed\ subsidiary\ model\ 160 \rangle \equiv
160
                                                                         (211)
           subroutine mce_load_frbus(string frbus_opts)
         ' take two corresponding FRB/US models (eg, stdver and pfver) and make
         ' the transformations needed to the second model so that the pair of
         ' models can be used with the mcz_solve_subs programs
         ' parameters
             required: mce_vars, mod_b, mod_f, path_b, path_f
             optional: allbut, only
           !allbut = 0
           !only = 0
           frbus_opts = @lower(frbus_opts)
           frbus_opts = @replace(frbus_opts," ","")
           frbus_opts = @replace(frbus_opts,","," ")
           frbus_opts = " " + frbus_opts + " "
           if @isempty(frbus_opts) = 0 then
             call mcz_equalopt("mce_vars",frbus_opts)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               %mce_vars = @lower({%temp})
               @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the mce_vars argument")
               stop
               endif
             call mcz_equalopt("mod_b",frbus_opts)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               \mbox{\em mod_b} = {\mbox{\em temp}}
               @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the mod_b argument")
               stop
               endif
             call mcz_equalopt("mod_f",frbus_opts)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               \mbox{mod}_f = {\mbox{wtemp}}
               else
               @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the mod_f argument")
               stop
               endif
             call mcz_equalopt("path_b",frbus_opts)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
```

%path\_b = {%temp}

```
else
                 @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the path_b argument")
                 stop
                 endif
           call mcz_equalopt("path_f",frbus_opts)
           if @len(%temp)>0 then
                 \protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\protect\pro
                 else
                 @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the path_f argument")
                 endif
           call mcz_equalopt("allbut",frbus_opts)
           if @len(%temp)>0 then
                 !allbut = 1
                 %allbut = {%temp}
                 else
                 call mcz_equalopt("only",frbus_opts)
                 if @len(%temp)>0 then
                       !only = 1
                      %only = {%temp}
                      endif
                 endif
           endif
' Added so that users may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations instead of
' passing in a list that may change in the future.
' Model consistent Asset Pricing
     %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10 zpib5 zpic58'
' Wages and prices
     %s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "
' Others - all PAC expectations
     %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxnfbd zxnfbs zxnfbi zyh zyhp zyht
     if %mce_vars = "-all" then
           %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
           endif
     if %mce_vars = "-mcap" then
           %mce_vars = %s_mcap
           endif
     if %mce_vars = "-wp" then
          %mce_vars = %s_wp
           endif
```

```
if %mce_vars = "-mcap+wp" then
   %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp
   endif
 if @left(%mce_vars, 7) = "-allbut" then
   %tmp = %mce_vars
   %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
   %mce_vars = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
   endif
 string zvar_list = %mce_vars
 %zvars = %mce_vars
' backward-looking model
 ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b)
 if !allbut = 1 then
   %tmp = "allbut " + %allbut
   ld_some_eqs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b,eqnames=%tmp)
 if !only = 1 then
   %tmp = %only
   ld_some_eqs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b,eqnames=%tmp)
 if !allbut = 0 and !only = 0 then
   ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b)
   endif
' model with mce equations and errors
 ld_mce_eqs(pfname=%mod_f,pfpath=%path_f,mcename=%mod_f,mceeqs=%mce_vars)
 ld_mce_cfs(pfname=%mod_f,pfpath=%path_f,mceeqs=%mce_vars)
 !nmcevars = @wcount(%mce_vars)
 %evars = @wcross("e",%mce_vars)
 for !i = 1 to !nmcevars
   %tmp = @word(%mce_vars,!i)
   %tmpw = "w" + @mid(%tmp,2)
   if %tmp <> "zyh" and %tmp <> "zyhp" and <math>%tmp <> "zyht" then
     %tmp1 = @word(%evars,!i) + "=" + @word(%mce_vars,!i) + "-" + %tmpw
     else
     %tmp1 = @word(%evars,!i) + "= log(" + @word(%mce_vars,!i) + "/" + %tmpw + ")"
     endif
    {\mod_f}.append {\mod_f}
   next
```

endsub

#### Defines:

mce\_load\_frbus, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, and 86.
Uses ld\_frbus\_cfs 169a 169b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 170b 171, ld\_mce\_cfs 172b 173, ld\_mce\_eqs 175 176, ld\_some\_eqs 180 181, and mcz\_equalopt 102a.

# 6.2.24 create wage and expectation variables in forward looking model

```
\langle create \ wage \ and \ expectation \ variables \ in \ forward \ looking \ model \ 164 \rangle \equiv
164
                                                                        (211)
           subroutine make_frbus_mcevars(string frbus_mcevars)
         ' Create data for the w and e variables in the operational forward looking
         ' model over the workfile sample currently in effect
         ' The input string contains the names of the expectations variables that
         ' are to have MC solutions
          %mce_vars = frbus_mcevars
         ' The user may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations instead of
         ' passing in a list that may change in the future.
         ' Model consistent Asset Pricing
          %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10 zp.
         ' Wages and prices
          %s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "
         ' Others - all PAC expectations
          %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxnfbd zxnfbs zxnfbi zyl
          if %mce_vars = "-all" then
            %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
           if %mce_vars = "-mcap" then
            %mce_vars = %s_mcap
             endif
           if %mce_vars = "-wp" then
             %mce_vars = %s_wp
           if %mce_vars = "-mcap+wp" then
             %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp
             endif
           if @left(%mce_vars, 7) = "-allbut" then
             %tmp = %mce_vars
             %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
             %mce_vars = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
             endif
```

' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations

```
smpl @all
for !i = 1 to @wcount(%mce_vars)
    %tmp = @word(%mce_vars,!i)
    %wtmp = "w" + @mid(%tmp,2)
    %wtmp_aerr = %wtmp + "_aerr"
    %etmp = "e" + @word(%mce_vars,!i)
    series {%wtmp} = {%tmp}
    series {%wtmp_aerr} = 0
    series {%etmp} = 0
    next
```

#### Defines:

make\_frbus\_mcevars, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, and 86.

## File Contents

Notice that I've had to change underscores in file and directory names when I create them with noweb. I use the "setup.sh" bash script to create the directory structure, and the "check.sh" bash script to compare the renamed Eview files to the originals. I have to ignore white space in the comparison because the original source files are not consistent with using either Microsoft or Linux line ending characters.

## 6.3 scripts

## 6.3.1 setup.sh

#### 6.3.2 check.sh

168  $\langle check.sh \ 168 \rangle \equiv$ 

cfile=frbus\_package/addins/ld\_frbus\_cfs/ld\_frbus\_cfs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package cfile=frbus\_package/addins/ld\_frbus\_eqs/ld\_frbus\_eqs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package cfile=frbus\_package/addins/ld\_mce\_cfs/ld\_mce\_cfs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/ad cfile=frbus\_package/addins/ld\_mce\_eqs/ld\_mce\_eqs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld\_mce\_eqs/ld\_mce\_eqs.prg; cfile=frbus\_package/addins/ld\_some\_eqs/ld\_some\_eqs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package, cfile=frbus\_package/addins/ld\_varinfo/ld\_varinfo.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/ad cfile=frbus\_package/addins/regadd.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg cfile=frbus\_package/programs/example1.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg; cfile=frbus\_package/programs/example2.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg; cfile=frbus\_package/programs/example3.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg; cfile=frbus\_package/programs/example4.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg; cfile=frbus\_package/programs/ocpolicy.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpo cfile=frbus\_package/programs/pings.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.pr cfile=frbus\_package/programs/plot\_resids.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot\_resids.prg; cfile=frbus\_package/programs/stochsim.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg; cfile=frbus\_package/subs/master\_library.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master cfile=frbus\_package/subs/mce\_solve\_library.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce cfile=mce\_solve\_package/example1.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg; cfile=mce\_solve\_package/example2.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg; cfile=mce\_solve\_package/example3.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg; cfile=mce\_solve\_package/example4.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg; cfile=mce\_solve\_package/example5.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg; cfile=mce\_solve\_package/mce\_solve\_library.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.s cfile=state\_space\_package/data\_transformations.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package cfile=state\_space\_package/estimation\_code.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package/es cfile=state\_space\_package/frbus\_supply\_estimation.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.pac cfile=state\_space\_package/frbus\_supply\_filter.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package cfile=state\_space\_package/initial\_values.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package/ini This code is written to file check.sh.

Uses data\_transformations 63, estimation\_code 66, example1 3 41, example2 7 44, example3 11 47, example4 17 51, example5 54, frbus.supply.filter 70,

 $frbus\_supply\_estimation 59, initial\_values 73, ld\_frbus\_cfs 169a 169b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 170b 171, ld\_mce\_cfs 172b 173, ld\_mce\_eqs 175 176, ld\_some\_eqs 180 181,$ 

 ${\tt ld\_varinfo}\ 184\ 185,\ {\tt mce\_solve\_library}\ 210\ 215a,\ {\tt ocpolicy}\ 23,\ {\tt pings}\ 187d,$ 

plot\_resids 193, regadd 186b, and stochsim 197.

## 6.4 frbus package

## 6.4.1 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg

```
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg 169a\rangle \equiv
169a
           ⟨load frbus coefficients 169b⟩
           ⟨load frbus coefficients call 170a⟩
        This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg.
          ld_frbus_cfs, used in chunks 3, 11, 160, 168, 170a, 186b, 194, and 198.
169b
        \langle load\ frbus\ coefficients\ 169b\rangle \equiv
                                                                                 (169a)
           subroutine ld_frbus_cfs(string %mname, string %mpath)
           'Load coefficients for frbus version %mname from a text file in directory %mpath
           'that has been previously created by the script eq_docs2eviews.
             %cpath = %mpath + %mname + "_coeffs.txt"
             delete(noerr) coefpath
             text coefpath
             coefpath.append(file) %cpath
             svector coefpathv = coefpath.@svectornb
             for !i = 1 to 900
               svector cofname = @wsplit(coefpathv(!i))
               %y1 = cofname(1)
                  if @left(%y1,6) = "theend" then
                    exitloop
                  endif
               %y2 = cofname(2)
               %y3 = cofname(3)
               coef({%y2}) {%y1}
               {%y1}.fill {%y3}
               next
           endsub
        Defines:
          ld_frbus_cfs, used in chunks 3, 11, 160, 168, 170a, 186b, 194, and 198.
```

```
170 frbuseview.nw June 19, 2016
```

```
170a
        \langle load\ frbus\ coefficients\ call\ 170a \rangle \equiv
                                                                             (169a)
          if Olen(Ooption(1)) < 1 or Olen(Ooption(2)) < 1 then
            @uiprompt("Error: ld_frbus_cfs requires model name and model path")
            stop
          endif
          %temp = @equaloption("modelname")
          if @len(%temp)>0 then
                   %mname = %temp
          endif
          %temp = @equaloption("modelpath")
          if @len(%temp)>0 then
                   %mpath = %temp
          endif
          call ld_frbus_cfs(%mname, %mpath)
        Uses ld_frbus_cfs 169a 169b.
```

## 6.4.2 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg

170ь  $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg$  170ь $\rangle \equiv \langle load\ frbus\ equations$  171 $\rangle$ 

⟨load frbus equations call 172a⟩

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg. Defines:

ld\_frbus\_eqs, used in chunks 3, 11, 160, 168, 172a, 186b, 194, and 198.

```
171
       \langle load\ frbus\ equations\ 171 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (170b)
         subroutine ld_frbus_eqs(string %mname, string %mpath)
         'Create eviews model %mname and load it with the equations for frbus version
         '%mname that are in a text file in directory %mpath that was previously created
         'by the script eq_docs2eviews.
           %epath = %mpath + %mname
           if Ofileexist(%epath) <> 1 then
            %epath = %mpath + %mname + "_eqs.txt"
           endif
           delete(noerr) eqtext
           text eqtext
           eqtext.append(file) %epath
           svector eqtextv = eqtext.@svectornb
           model {%mname}
           !eqnum = 0
           %eqcode = " "
           for !i = 1 to 3000
             %y = eqtextv(!i)
             if @isempty(%y) = 0 then
               'string is not blank
               if @left(\%y,6) = "theend" then
                 %x = @replace(%eqcode," _"," ")
                 {\mname}.append {\mathbb{k}x}
                 exitloop
                 endif
               !k = @instr(%y,":")
               if !k > 0 then
                 'string contains the start of a new equation
                 !eqnum = !eqnum + 1
                 if !eqnum > 0 then
                   %x = @replace(%eqcode," _"," ")
                   {\mname}.append {\mathbb{x}}
                   endif
                 %eqcode = @mid(%y,!k+1)
                 else
                 'string contains the continuation of an equation
                 %eqcode = %eqcode + %y
                 endif
```

```
172
                                                                           June 19, 2016
                 frbuseview.nw
                  endif
                next
           endsub
         Defines:
           ld_frbus_eqs, used in chunks 3, 11, 160, 168, 172a, 186b, 194, and 198.
         \langle load\ frbus\ equations\ call\ 172a \rangle \equiv
172a
                                                                                    (170b)
           if Olen(Ooption(1)) < 1 or Olen(Ooption(2)) < 1 then
             @uiprompt("Error: ld_frbus_eqs requires model name and model path")
             stop
           endif
           %temp = @equaloption("modelname")
           if @len(%temp)>0 then
                     %mname = %temp
           endif
           %temp = @equaloption("modelpath")
           if @len(%temp)>0 then
                     %mpath = %temp
           endif
           call ld_frbus_eqs(%mname, %mpath)
         Uses ld_frbus_eqs 170b 171.
                  srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg
         6.4.3
         \langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg\ 172b \rangle \equiv
172b
           \langle load \ mce \ coefficients \ 173 \rangle
           ⟨load mce coefficients call 174⟩
         This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg.
         Defines:
           ld_mce_cfs, used in chunks 160, 168, 174, and 186b.
```

```
\langle \mathit{load}\ \mathit{mce}\ \mathit{coefficients}\ 173 \rangle {\equiv}
173
                                                                        (172b)
         subroutine ld_mce_cfs(string %pfname, string %pfpath, string %mceeqs)
         'This subroutine is used for setting up the particular type of frbus simulations
         'with model-consistent expectations in which a separate model is created
         'containing only those expectations equations chosen to have model-consistent
         'solutions. For those expectations variables, the initial z character is replaced
         'with w.
         'Load coefficients for frbus version %pfname from a text file in directory %pfpath
         'that has been previously created by the script eq_docs2eviews. Only those
         'coefficient vectors whose names are in the string %mceeqs are stored.
           %cpath = %pfpath + %pfname + "_coeffs.txt"
           delete(noerr) coefpathpv
           text coefpathpv
           coefpathpv.append(file) %cpath
           svector coefpathv = coefpathpv.@svectornb
           for !i = 1 to 900
             svector cofname = @wsplit(coefpathv(!i))
             %v1 = cofname(1)
               if @left(%y1,6) = "theend" then
                 exitloop
               endif
             %v2 = cofname(2)
             %y3 = cofname(3)
             for !j = 1 to @wcount(%mceeqs)
               %z = @lower(@word(%mceeqs,!j))
               %z1 = @mid(%y1,3)
               if %z = %z1 then
                 %y1 = @replace(%y1,"z","w")
                 coef({%y2}) {%y1}
                 {%y1}.fill {%y3}
                 exitloop
               endif
             next
           next
         endsub
```

Defines:

ld\_mce\_cfs, used in chunks 160, 168, 174, and 186b.

```
174
      \langle load\ mce\ coefficients\ call\ 174 \rangle \equiv
                                                                      (172b)
        if @len(@option(1)) < 1 or @len(@option(2)) < 1 or @len(@option(3)) < 1 then
          @uiprompt("Error: ld_mce_cfs requires four parameters: pf model name, pf model pa
          stop
        endif
        %temp = @equaloption("pfname")
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
                %pfname = %temp
        endif
        %temp = @equaloption("pfpath")
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
                %pfpath = %temp
        endif
        %temp = @equaloption("mceeqs")
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
                %mceeqs = %temp
        endif
              ' Added so that users may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations
              ' passing in a list that may change in the future.
              ' Model consistent Asset Pricing
             %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10
              ' Wages and prices
              %s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "
              ' Others - all PAC expectations
             %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zpi10 zpib5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxnfbd z:
             if %mceeqs = "-all" then
               %mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
             endif
             if mceqs = -mcap then
               %mceeqs = %s_mcap
              if %mceeqs = "-wp" then
               mceeqs = ms_wp
              endif
              if %mceeqs = "-mcap+wp" then
               mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp
             if @left(%mceeqs, 7) = "-allbut" then
               %tmp = %mceeqs
               %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
               %mceeqs = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
              endif
             string zvar_list = %mceeqs
             scalar nzvars = @wcount(%mceeqs)
             group zvars {%mceeqs}
```

```
call ld_mce_cfs(%pfname, %pfpath, %mceeqs)
Uses ld_mce_cfs 172b 173.
```

## 6.4.4 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg

175  $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg$  175 $\rangle \equiv \langle load \ mce \ equations$  176 $\rangle = \langle load \ mce \ equations \ call$  179 $\rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg. Defines:

 $1d_mce_eqs$ , used in chunks 160, 168, 179, and 186b.

```
176
      \langle load\ mce\ equations\ 176 \rangle \equiv
                                                                       (175)
        subroutine ld_mce_eqs(string %pfname, string %pfpath, string %mcename, string %mceeq
        'This subroutine is used for setting up the particular type of frbus simulations
        'with model-consistent expectations in which a separate model is created
        'containing only those expectations equations chosen to have model-consistent
        'solutions. For those expectations variables, the initial z character is replaced
        'with w.
        'Create eviews model %mcename and load it with the equations for frbus version
        '%pfname that are in a text file in directory %pfpath that was previously created
        'by the script eq_docs2eviews. Only those equations whose names are in the
        'string %mceeqs are included.
        ' revised 2/11/13 to add a check that version %pfname contains an equation for each
        ' name in %mceeqs
          %epath = %pfpath + %pfname + "_eqs.txt"
          delete(noerr) eqtextp
          text eqtextp
          eqtextp.append(file) %epath
          svector eqtextpv = eqtextp.@svectornb
          %coded = " "
          model {%mcename}
          !eqnum = 0
          %eqnew = " "
          %eqold = " "
          %eqcode = " "
          %eqcodeold = " "
          for !i = 1 to 3000
            %appendit = "no"
            %exitloop = "no"
            %y = eqtextpv(!i)
            if @isempty(%y) = 0 then
               'string is not blank
              if @left(%y,6) = "theend" then
                 'string contains end-of-file flag
```

%appendit = "yes"
%exitloop = "yes"
%eqold = %eqnew

%eqcodeold = %eqcode

```
endif
      !k = @instr(%y,":")
     if !k > 0 then
        'string contains the start of a new equation
       %appendit = "yes"
        !eqnum = !eqnum + 1
        if !eqnum > 0 then
         %eqold = %eqnew
         %eqcodeold = %eqcode
         endif
        %eqnew = @left(%y,!k-1)
       %eqcode = @mid(%y,!k+1)
        'string contains the continuation of an equation
        %eqcode = %eqcode + %y
       endif
      if %appendit = "yes" then
        'add equation to model only if it is one with mce expectations
       for !j = 1 to @wcount(%mceeqs)
         %z = @lower(@word(%mceeqs,!j))
         if %z = %eqold then
           %x = @replace(%eqcodeold," _"," ")
           %x = @replace(%x,"z","w")
            {%mcename}.append {%x}
            %coded = %coded + " " + %z
            exitloop
            endif
         next
        endif
     if %exitloop = "yes" then
        exitloop
        endif
     endif
   next
' check that model %mcename contains an equation for each variable in %mceeqs
 !j = @wcount(%mceeqs)
  !k = @wcount(%coded)
 if !j <> !k then
   %z = @wnotin(@lower(%mceeqs),@lower(%coded))
   %errstring = "Error in ld_mce_eqs addin: Model " + %mcename
```

```
%errstring = %errstring + " does not contain equation(s) for variable(s): " + %
%errstring = %errstring + ". Execution stopped."
@uiprompt(%errstring)
stop
endif
```

endsub

Defines:

 $1d\_mce\_eqs$ , used in chunks 160, 168, 179, and 186b.

```
179
       \langle load\ mce\ equations\ call\ 179 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (175)
         if Qlen(Qoption(1)) < 1 or Qlen(Qoption(2)) < 1 or Qlen(Qoption(3)) < 1 or Qlen(Qoption(4)) < 1
           @uiprompt("Error: ld_mce_eqs requires five parameters: pf model name, pf model path, mce mod
           stop
         endif
         %temp = @equaloption("pfname")
         if @len(%temp)>0 then
                 %pfname = %temp
         endif
         %temp = @equaloption("pfpath")
         if @len(%temp)>0 then
                 %pfpath = %temp
         endif
         %temp = @equaloption("mcename")
         if @len(%temp)>0 then
                 %mcename = %temp
         endif
         %temp = @equaloption("mceeqs")
         if @len(%temp) >0 then
                 %mceeqs = %temp
         endif
              ' Added so that users may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations instead of
              ' passing in a list that may change in the future.
               ' Model consistent Asset Pricing
              %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10 zpib5 "
              ' Wages and prices
              %s_wp = "zpicxfezpieci"
               ' Others - all PAC expectations
              %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zpi10 zpib5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxbd zxbs zxbi zyh
              if %mceeqs = "-all" then
                %mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
              endif
              if %mceeqs = "-mcap" then
                %mceeqs = %s_mcap
              if %mceeqs = "-wp" then
                \mbox{\em mceeqs} = \mbox{\em ks\_wp}
              if %mceeqs = "-mcap+wp" then
                mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp
              if @left(%mceeqs, 7) = "-allbut" then
                %tmp = %mceeqs
                %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
                %mceeqs = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
```

```
' endif
```

- ' string zvar\_list = %mceeqs
- scalar nzvars = @wcount(%mceeqs)
- ' group zvars {%mceeqs}

call ld\_mce\_eqs(%pfname, %pfpath, %mcename, %mceeqs) Uses ld\_mce\_eqs  $175\ 176.$ 

## $6.4.5 \quad srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg$

180  $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg$  180 $\rangle \equiv \langle load\ some\ equations\ 181 \rangle \langle load\ some\ equations\ call\ 183 \rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg. Defines:

ld\_some\_eqs, used in chunks 160, 168, 183, and 186b.

```
181
       \langle load \ some \ equations \ 181 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (180)
         subroutine ld_some_eqs(string %mname, string %mpath, string %eqnames)
         ' Create eviews model %mname and load it with selected equations for frbus version
         ' %mname that are in a text file in directory %mpath that was previously created
         ' by the script eq_docs2eviews. Only those equations whose names match or do not match the
         ' equation names in the string %eqnames are included. If the first "word" in %eqnames is
         ' "allbut", then all equations but those listed will be included.
         <sup>,</sup>****************************
         'parse equation string and put equation names in a table
          %allbut = "no"
          string zlist = " "
          zlist = zlist + %eqnames
          zlist = @trim(zlist)
              if @isempty(zlist) = 1 then
               @uiprompt("Error: input string to subroutine load_selected_equtions is empty!!")
               stop
               endif
          if @wfind(@upper(zlist), "ALLBUT") = 1 then
              %allbut = "yes"
              zlist = @wdrop(zlist,"ALLBUT")
              zlist = @wdrop(zlist,"allbut")
          endif
         <sup>,</sup>*****************************
         'parse equation file
          %epath = %mpath + %mname + "_eqs.txt"
          delete(noerr) eqtext
          text eqtext
          eqtext.append(file) %epath
          svector eqtextv = eqtext.@svectornb
          model {%mname}
           !eqnum = 0
          %egnew = " "
          %eqold = " "
          %eqcode = " "
```

%eqcodeold = " "

```
for !i = 1 to 3000
 %appendit = "no"
 %exitloop = "no"
 %y = eqtextv(!i)
  if @isempty(%y) = 0 then
    'string is not blank
    if @left(%y,6) = "theend" then
      %appendit = "yes"
     %exitloop = "yes"
      %eqold = %eqnew
      %eqcodeold = %eqcode
      endif
    !k = @instr(%y,":")
    if !k > 0 then
      'string contains the start of a new equation
      %appendit = "yes"
      !eqnum = !eqnum + 1
      if !eqnum > 0 then
        %eqold = %eqnew
        %eqcodeold = %eqcode
      %eqnew = @left(%y,!k-1)
      %eqcode = @mid(%y,!k+1)
      'string contains the continuation of an equation
      %eqcode = %eqcode + %y
      endif
    if %appendit = "yes" then
      'check whether equation should be added to model
      !zswitch = 0
      for !j = 1 to @wcount(zlist)
        %z = @lower(@word(zlist,!j))
        if %z = %eqold then
          !zswitch = 1
          endif
        if %allbut = "no" and !zswitch = 1 then
          %x = @replace(%eqcodeold," _"," ")
          {%mname}.append {%x}
          exitloop
          endif
        if %allbut = "yes" and !j = @wcount(zlist) and !zswitch = 0 then
          %x = @replace(%eqcodeold," _"," ")
```

```
June 19, 2016 frbuseview.nw 183
```

```
{\mname}.append {\mathcal{K}}
                                                                                                              endif
                                                                                                  next
                                                                                        endif
                                                                             if %exitloop = "yes" then
                                                                                        exitloop
                                                                                        endif
                                                                             endif
                                                                  next
                                              endsub
                                   Defines:
                                             ld_some_eqs, used in chunks 160, 168, 183, and 186b.
183
                                   \langle load\ some\ equations\ call\ 183 \rangle \equiv
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               (180)
                                               \  \, \text{if } \mathbb{Q} \text{len}(\mathbb{Q} \text{option}(1)) \, < \, 1 \quad \text{or } \mathbb{Q} \text{len}(\mathbb{Q} \text{option}(2)) \, < \, 1 \, \text{ or } \mathbb{Q} \text{len}(\mathbb{Q} \text{option}(3)) \, < \, 1 \, \text{ then} \\ \  \, \text{then} \, \mathbb{Q} \text{option}(2) \, = \, 1 \, \text{option}(2) \, = \, 1 \,
                                                       @uiprompt("Error: ld_some_eqs requires model name and model pathand and eqnames")
                                                       stop
                                              endif
                                             %temp = @equaloption("modelname")
                                              if @len(%temp)>0 then
                                                                                        %mname = %temp
                                             endif
                                             %temp = @equaloption("modelpath")
                                              if @len(%temp)>0 then
                                                                                        %mpath = %temp
                                             endif
                                              %temp = @equaloption("eqnames")
                                             if @len(%temp)>0 then
                                                                                        %eqnames = %temp
                                             endif
                                             call ld_some_eqs(%mname, %mpath, %eqnames)
                                   Uses \ {\tt ld\_some\_eqs} \ 180 \ 181.
```

## 6.4.6 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg

184  $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg 184 \rangle \equiv \langle load\ variable\ information\ 185 \rangle$ 

 $\langle load\ variable\ information\ call\ 186a \rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg. Defines:

ld\_varinfo, used in chunks 168, 186, 194, and 198.

```
185
       \langle load\ variable\ information\ 185 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (184)
         subroutine ld_varinfo(string %pathname)
         'Load varinfo information from %pathname in strings
           text vinfo_text
           vinfo_text.append(file) %pathname
           svector varinfo = vinfo_text.@svectornb
           string vinfo_vname = " "
           string vinfo_vtype = " "
           string vinfo_vrule = " "
           string vinfo_sector = " "
           string vinfo_stoch = " "
           string vinfo_decomp = " "
           for !i = 1 to 900
             %y1 = varinfo(!i)
             !ss = @instr(%y1," ")
             %vname = @mid(%y1,!ss+1,8)
             %vname = @rtrim(%vname)
             %vtype = @mid(%y1,!ss+107,1)
             %vrule = @mid(%y1,!ss+109,1)
             if %vrule = " " then
               %vrule = "0"
             endif
             %sector = @mid(%y1,!ss+120,1)
             if %sector = " " then
               %sector = "0"
             endif
             %stoch = @mid(%y1, !ss+128,2)
             decomp = Qmid(y1,!ss+135,2)
             if %vname = "ZZZBLANK" then
               scalar vinfo_size = !i-1
               exitloop
               endif
            vinfo_vname = vinfo_vname + " " + %vname
            vinfo_vtype = vinfo_vtype + " " + %vtype
            vinfo_vrule = vinfo_vrule + " " + %vrule
            vinfo_sector = vinfo_sector + " " + %sector
            vinfo_stoch = vinfo_stoch + " " + %stoch
            vinfo_decomp = vinfo_decomp + " " + %decomp
           next
         endsub
      Defines:
```

ld\_varinfo, used in chunks 168, 186, 194, and 198.

```
186 frbuseview.nw June 19, 2016
```

## 6.4.7 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg

```
addin(proc="ld_frbus_eqs",desc="Load FRB/US equations") ".\ld_frbus_eqs/ld_frbus_eqs addin(proc="ld_frbus_cfs",desc="Load FRB/US coefficients") ".\ld_frbus_cfs/ld_frbus_eqs addin(proc="ld_mce_eqs",desc="Load MCE equations") ".\ld_mce_eqs/ld_mce_eqs.prg" addin(proc="ld_mce_cfs",desc="Load MCE coefficients") ".\ld_mce_cfs/ld_mce_cfs.prg" addin(proc="ld_some_eqs",desc="Load some FRB/US equations") ".\ld_some_eqs/ld_some_eq addin(proc="ld_varinfo",desc="Load variable information file") ".\ld_varinfo/ld_varinfo". This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg.

Defines:
    regadd, used in chunk 168.
Uses ld_frbus_cfs 169a 169b, ld_frbus_eqs 170b 171, ld_mce_cfs 172b 173,
```

#### 6.4.8 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg

186c ⟨srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg 186c⟩≡ ⟨frbus example1 3⟩

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg.

ld\_mce\_eqs 175 176, ld\_some\_eqs 180 181, and ld\_varinfo 184 185.

#### 6.4.9 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg.

## 6.4.10 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg

187a  $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg 187a \rangle \equiv \langle frbus \ example3 \ 11 \rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg.

## 6.4.11 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg

187b  $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg 187b \rangle \equiv \langle frbus \ example4 \ 17 \rangle$ 

This code is written to file  ${\tt srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg}.$ 

## 6.4.12 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg

187c  $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg \ 187c \rangle \equiv \langle frbus \ ocpolicy \ 23 \rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg.

## 6.4.13 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg

187d	$\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg\ 187d \rangle \equiv \langle simulate\ six\ ping\ simulations,\ aka\ simple\ IRFs\ 31 \rangle$
	**************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	$\langle copy \ it \ 188a \rangle$
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	$\langle plot \ it \ 188b \rangle$
	, ************************************
	, ************************************
	'*************************************

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg. Defines:

pings, used in chunks 31 and 168.

```
188a
        \langle copy \ it \ 188a \rangle \equiv
                                                                            (187d)
            subroutine copyit
            smpl %simstart %simend
            \verb|series| picnia_{\pi} = picnia{\%suf} - picnia|
            series pic4_{%ping} = pic4{%suf} - pic4
            series picx4_{%ping} = picx4{%suf} - picx4
            series picxfe_{%ping} = picxfe{%suf} - picxfe
            series xgap2_{%ping} = xgap2{%suf} -xgap2
            series lur_{%ping} = lur{%suf} - lur
            series rff_{%ping} = rff{%suf} - rff
            endsub
        Defines:
          copyit, used in chunk 31.
188b
        \langle plot \ it \ 188b \rangle \equiv
                                                                            (187d)
            subroutine plotit(string %grname, string %width, string %height, string %var1, str
            graph {%grname}.line {%var1} zero
            {%grname}.options size({%width},{%height}) -inbox
            {%grname}.setelem(1) linewidth(3) linepattern(1) linecolor(black)
            {%grname}.addtext(t,just(c),font(9)) %title
            {%grname}.addtext(0,-.15,font(8),just("r")) %units
            {%grname}.datelabel format(yyyy)
            {%grname}.legend -display
            {%grname}.axis(b) font(9)
            {%grname}.axis(1) font(9)
            endsub
        Defines:
```

June 19, 2016

188

frbuseview.nw

plotit, used in chunk 189.

```
189
       \langle graph \ it \ 189 \rangle \equiv
                                                                      (187d)
          subroutine graphit
          smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
          series zero = 0
          delete(noerr) gr_*
         ' RFF ping
          %ping = "rff"
          %name = %ping + "a"
          %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Funds Rate"
          call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
          %name = %ping + "b"
          %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Funds Rate"
          call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
          %name = %ping + "c"
          %var1 = "rff_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Funds Rate\rto Funds Rate"
          call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
          graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
          gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
         ' EGFO ping
          %ping = "eg"
          %name = %ping + "a"
          %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Federal Purch"
          call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
          %name = %ping + "b"
          %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Federal Purch"
```

```
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "c"
 %var1 = "egfn_shr_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Federal Purch\rto Federal Purch"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent of GDP")
 graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
' REQP ping
 %ping = "reqp"
 %name = %ping + "a"
 %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Equity Premium"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "b"
 %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Equity Premium"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "c"
 var1 = "reqp_" + ping
 %tt = "Response of Equity Premium\rto Equity Premium"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
' POILR ping
 %ping = "oil"
 %name = %ping + "a"
 %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Oil Price"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "b"
 %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
```

```
%tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Oil Price"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "c"
 %var1 = "poil_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Oil Price\rto Oil Price"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"dollars per barrel")
 graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
' HMFPT ping
 %ping = "hmfp"
 %name = %ping + "a"
 %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto MFP Growth"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "b"
 %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto MFP Growth"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "c"
 %var1 = "hmfpt_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of MFP Growth\rto MFP Growth"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
' MFPT ping
 %ping = "mfp"
 %name = %ping + "a"
 %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto MFP Level"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
```

```
%name = %ping + "b"
  %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
  %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto MFP Level"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
  %name = %ping + "c"
  %var1 = "mfpt_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of MFP Level\rto MFP Level"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent")
  graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
%ping = "prem"
  %name = %ping + "a"
  %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
  %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Term Premium"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
  %name = %ping + "b"
  %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
  %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Term Premium"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
  %name = %ping + "c"
  %var1 = "rg10p_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Term Premium (10-year) \rto Term Premium"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent")
  graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
  gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
%ping = "exch"
  %name = %ping + "a"
  %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Exchange Rate"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
  %name = %ping + "b"
  %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Exchange Rate"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
```

```
%name = %ping + "c"
%var1 = "fpxr_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Exchange Rate \rto Exchange Rate"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent")

graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
endsub

Defines:
    graphit, used in chunk 31.
Uses plotit 188b.
```

## 6.4.14 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg

193  $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg 193 \rangle \equiv \langle plot historical residuals of key equations 194 \rangle$ 

 $\langle find\ variable\ description\ 196 \rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg. Defines:

 ${\tt plot\_resids},$  used in chunk 168.

```
194
     \langle plot \ historical \ residuals \ of \ key \ equations \ 194 \rangle \equiv
                                                         (193)
       ' Program to plot the historical residuals of key FRB/US equations
       ' Each residual has the same units of measurement as the
       ' the left hand side of its equation
       ' Initial filename and parameter settings
       ' Subroutines
        include ../subs/master_library
       ' Workfile
        %wfstart = "1975q1"
        %wfend = "2030q4"
        %mainpage = "main"
        wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
       ' FRB/US model name and location
        %varmod = "stdver"
        %varpath = "../mods/"
        %varinfo = "../mods/stdver_varinfo"
       ' Input datbase
        %dbin = "../data/longbase"
       ' Plot range
        %plotstart = "1980q1"
        %plotend = "2014q2"
       ' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients
       ' Load equations and coefficients
        ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
        ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
        ld_varinfo(pathname=%varinfo)
       ' Load data
        dbopen %dbin as longbase
        smpl %plotstart-12 %plotend
        fetch(d=longbase) *
```

```
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Compute baseline tracking add factors
 smpl %plotstart %plotend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
, Plots
%plotvars = "eco ecd eh epd epi eps ki ex emo lfpr lhp leo lww"
 %plotvars = %plotvars + " picxfe pieci pcer pcfr pcengr"
 %plotvars = %plotvars + " rg5p rg10p rg30p rbbbp rcar rme rtbe rcgain"
 %plotvars = %plotvars + " ynidn yniin yhibn"
 smpl %plotstart %plotend
 series zero = 0
 spool plot_vars
 !counter = 0
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%plotvars)
   %vname = @word(%plotvars,!i)
   call find_var_description
   !counter = !counter + 1
   graph gr_{%vname}.line zero {%vname}_a
   %title = %vname + ": " + %desc
   gr_{%vname}.addtext(t) %title
   gr_{%vname}.axis range(minmax)
   gr_{%vname}.options size(4,3)
   gr_{%vname}.legend -display
   plot_vars.append gr_{%vname}
   %index = "000" + @str(!counter)
   if !counter < 100 then
     %index = @right(%index,2)
     else
     %index = @right(%index,3)
     endif
   %name = "untitled" + %index
   plot_vars.name {%name} {%vname}
```

next

```
plot_vars.display
```

Uses find\_var\_description 196, group2zero 81a, groupnew 82, ld\_frbus\_cfs 169a 169b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 170b 171, and ld\_varinfo 184 185.

This was originally written in Fortran! Look at the ii, jj, kk variable names. I had forgotten about that from when I briefly helped the programmer debug the original model some 45 years ago. Who would have expected nostalgia from something so prosaic. I never saw the original source code because I was working with only a hex dump.

```
\langle find\ variable\ description\ 196 \rangle \equiv
196
                                                                            (193)
           subroutine find_var_description
           for !j = 1 to 500
             %vline = vinfo_text.@line(!j)
              !eq = @instr(%vline,"=")
             !zz = !eq-4
             %name = @lower(@rtrim(@ltrim(@mid(%vline,4,!zz))))
             if %vname = %name then
               %desc = " "
                !ii = !eq + 1
                !kk = @instr(%vline, "sector_")
               if !kk = 0 then
                  !kk = @instr(%vline,"X.")
                  !jj = !kk - 1 - !ii
                  else
                  !jj = !kk - 7 - !ii
               %desc = @rtrim(@mid(%vline,!ii,!jj))
               exitloop
               endif
             next
           endsub
       Defines:
```

find\_var\_description, used in chunk 194.

# $6.4.15 \quad srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg$

197	$\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg 197 \rangle \equiv$		
	$\langle stochastic\ simulations\ under\ variable\ expectations\ 198 \rangle$		
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************		
	'Subroutines		
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************		
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************		
	$\langle form\ table\ 207 \rangle$		
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************		
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************		
	$\langle make\ statistics\ 208 \rangle$		
	This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg.		

stochsim, used in chunk 168.

198  $\langle stochastic\ simulations\ under\ variable\ expectations\ 198 \rangle \equiv$ (197)' Program for stochastic sims under VAR expectations ' The stochastic shocks are bootstrapped from the de-meaned ' historical errors of stochastic equations. The parameters ' %residstart and %residend declare the historical error range. ' A list of stochastic equations is extracted from the file ' pointed to by %varinfo. ' The bootstrap procedure randomly draws one historical quarter ' at a time when the parameter %errorblock = 1; alternatively, if ' %errorblock = 2, then the procedure would randomly draw two ' successive quarters at a time. ' The stochastic replications are simulated in a simple loop, ' rather than using the built-in EViews stochastic simulation ' procedure, so that shocks in the first simulation quarter can ' be scaled down by the parameter  $\q 1\_shock\_damp$ . This feature ' is useful when uncertainty about the first simulation quarter ' in real-time analysis by known information. The shocks are ' not rescaled when %q1\_shock\_damp = 1. ' Similarly, the parameter %rff\_weight\_q1 is also designed to be ' used in real-time analysis when the first simulation quarter ' corresponds to a quarter that is already under way. The ' parameter provides the fractional value to be given to the ' monetary policy rule; the remaining fractional value is given to ' an exogenous value. ' The document Simulation Basics discusses the effects of ' imposing the zero lower bound (ZLB) on the federal funds rate ' (%zerobound parameter) and imposing threshold conditions ' on the liftoff of the funds rate from a ZLB episode ' (%threshold parameter).

'Subroutines include ../subs/master\_library

' Initial filename and parameter settings

' Workfile
 %wfstart = "1965q1"
 %wfend = "2020q4"
 %mainpage = "main"

```
wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
' FRB/US model name and location
    %varmod = "stdver"
    %varpath = "../mods/"
    %varinfo = "../mods/stdver_varinfo"
' Input database
    %dbin = "../data/longbase"
' Simulation range
    %simstart = "2014q1"
    %simend = "2018q4"
' Stochastic parameters
    rndseed 12345
    %errorblock = "1"
    %residstart = "1970q1"
    %residend = "2012q4"
                              = "1000"
    %nsims
    \gray{mathcases} \gra
    %dbout_series = "rff lur picxfe picnia picx4 xgap2 hggdp anngr"
' Monetary policy
    %zerobound = "yes"
    %threshold = "yes"
    \frak{rff_weight_q1} = ".25"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' Load equations, coefficients, and variable information
    ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
    ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
    ld_varinfo(pathname=%varinfo)
' add 4-qtr gdp growth equation
    {%varmod}.append anngr - anngr_aerr = 100*((xgdp/xgdp(-4))-1)
' Load data
    dbopen %dbin as longbase
    fetch(d=longbase) *
    smpl @all
    series anngr = 100*((xgdp/xgdp(-4))-1)
```

```
' Set monetary policy to inertial Taylor rule (dmpintay, rffintay)
 smpl @all
 call set_mp("dmpintay")
 if %zerobound = "yes" then
   rffmin = .250
   else
   rffmin = -9999
   endif
 if %threshold = "yes" and %zerobound = "no" then
   %err = "Error: policy threshold conditions can only be used when the ZLB is impor-
   @uiprompt(%err)
   stop
   endif
 if %threshold = "yes" and %zerobound = "yes" then
   dmptrsh = 1
   dmptr = 0
   else
   dmptrsh = 0
   endif
 drstar = 0
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 dmpintay = @val(%rff_weight_q1)
 dmpex = 1 - dmpintay
' Set fiscal policy
 smpl @all
 call set_fp("dfpex")
 dmpstb = 1
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=14,z=1e-14)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %residstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
```

```
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
' More monetary policy settings
' if policy thresholds are turned on, set add factors on endogenous
' threshold switch variables to zero
 if %threshold = "yes" then
   smpl @all
   dmptpi_a = 0
   dmptlur_a = 0
   dmptmax_a = 0
   dmptr_a = 0
   endif
' if the zero bound is binding in part or all of the baseline, the
' adds (_a) on the policy rule and the funds rate equations are
' determined so as to satisfy the following conditions.
' a. the stochastic funds rate equals the maximum of the zero bound and
     the prediction of the chosen policy rule (this simply requires that
     rffe_a and rffe_aerr be zero)
'b. the prediction of the chosen policy rule is subject to _a add factors
     that are determined as follows:
     (1) in quarters when the zero bound is not binding in the baseline,
         the associated add factors equal the values that make
         the policy rule equation match the baseline funds rate under
         baseline conditions (this is satisfied by the tracking adds on
         the policy rule as long as the baseline value of the policy rule
         variable equals the baseline funds rate);
     (2) in quarters when the zero bound is binding in the baseline,
         the associated add factors are determined by linear interpolation
         of the add factors generated according to b(1) for the
         unbound quarters;
     (3) when the zero bound is binding in all baseline quarters, the
         policy rule add factors are zero;
     (4) the zero bound is assumed to be binding in the baseline whenever
         the baseline funds rate (rffe) is within 25 basis points of the
```

```
zero bound variable (rffmin).
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series not_constrnd = ((rffe - rffmin) >= .25)
 !tmp_max = @max(not_constrnd)
 !tmp_min = @min(not_constrnd)
' zero bound binding in some quarters
 if (!tmp_max = 1) and (!tmp_min = 0) then
   smpl %simstart %simend
   rffe_a = 0
   rffe_aerr = 0
   rffintay_aerr = 0
   smpl %simstart %simend if (not_constrnd = 0)
   rffintay_a = NA
   %series_in = "rffintay_a"
   %series_out = %series_in + "_int"
   call interp_lin(%series_in,%series_out,%simstart,%simend)
   rffintay_a = {%series_out}
   endif
' zero bound binding in all quarters
 if (!tmp_max = 0) and (!tmp_min = 0) then
   smpl %simstart %simend
   rffe_a = 0
   rffe_aerr = 0
   rffintay_aerr = 0
   rffintay_a = 0
   endif
' Stochastic shocks
' copy historical residuals into series whose names have _err suffixes
 smpl %residstart %residend
 copy *_a *_err
' use vinfo table to create list/group of equations to receive shocks
 %tmp = " "
 for !i = 1 to vinfo_size
   %vname = @word(vinfo_vname,!i)
   %stoch = @word(vinfo_stoch,!i)
   if %stoch <> "NO" then
    %tmp = %tmp + " " + %vname
     endif
```

```
next
 group shock {%tmp}
' demean historical residuals and store them in a matrix
 smpl %residstart %residend
 %error_names = " "
 for !i = 1 to shock.@count
   %temp = shock.@seriesname(!i) + "_err"
   scalar mm = @mean({%temp})
     series \{\%temp\} = \{\%temp\} - mm
     %error_names = %error_names + " " + %temp
 group errors {%error_names}
 smpl %residstart %residend
 stom(errors,errormat)
' create table of error statistics
 !nrows = 3 + errors.@count
 !ncols = 3
 table(!nrows,!ncols) error_tab
 error_tab.setjust(r1c1:r{!nrows}c1) left
 error_tab.setwidth(1) 20
 error_tab(1,1) = "error"
 error_tab(1,2) = "mean"
 error_tab(1,3) = "std-dev"
 smpl %residstart %residend
 for !i = 1 to errors.@count
   series tseries = errors(!i)
   error_tab(!i+3,1) = errors.@seriesname(!i)
   error_tab(!i+3,2) = @mean(tseries)
   error_tab(!i+3,3) = @stdev(tseries)
   next
' miscellaneous
 smpl %simstart %simend
 scalar nqtrs = @obssmpl
 scalar nrepl = {%nsims}
 scalar nsims = {%nsims}
 scalar nerrors = @rows(errormat)
 scalar bbbb = nqtrs-nerrors
 call groupnew("shock","_aerr")
```

```
group track {%dbout_series}
 call groupnames2string("track",%tracknames)
' for tracked variables, set up matrices to hold stochastic results
 for !i = 1 to track.@count
  %temp = track.@seriesname(!i)
  matrix(nqtrs,nrepl) {%temp}_mat
  next
' Stochastic sims
%sufstoch = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufstoch}) "stoch sims"
' stochastic simulation loop (sims are run one at a time)
 smpl %simstart %simend
 for !i = 1 to nrepl
  statusline running stochastic sim number !i
 ' draw nqtrs random rows from the matrix of historical errors,
 ' damp the shocks in the first drawn row, and load the shocks
 ' into the respective _aerr error series
  matrix stocherrors = @resample(errormat,bbbb,{%errorblock})
  for !j = 1 to @columns(stocherrors)
    stocherrors(1,!j) = @val(%q1_shock_damp) * stocherrors(1,!j)
    next
  mtos(stocherrors,shock_aerr)
   {%varmod}.solve
 ' store solution values
   for !j = 1 to track.@count
    %temp = track.@seriesname(!j)
    %temp1 = %temp + "_mat"
    stom({%temp}{%sufstoch},tmp)
    colplace({%temp1},tmp,!i)
    next
  next
' Statistics
```

```
statusline computing statistics
 smpl %simstart %simend
 !index = 2
 series year = @year
 series quarter = @quarter
 alpha yyyyqq = @str(year) + "Q" + @str(quarter)
 !lqtr = @dtoo(%simstart) - 1
 !nstats = 8
'create a summary table in which to store key results
 call tableform("summary_tab","100")
' loop over each tracked variable,
 for !ii1 = 1 to track.@count
   %trkname = track.@seriesname(!ii1)
 ' compute statistics
   call makestats(%trkname)
  ' load statistics into variable-specific table
   %tabname = %trkname + "_tab"
   call tableform(%tabname,@str(nqtrs+2))
   for !ii2 = 1 to nqtrs
     {%trkname}_tab(!ii2+2,1) = yyyyqq(!lqtr + !ii2)
     for !ii3 = 1 to !nstats
       {\psi trkname}_tab(!ii2+2,!ii3+1) = {\psi trkname}_stats(!ii2,!ii3)
       next
     next
  ' load statistics for each q4 observation into summary table
   !index = !index + 1
   summary_tab(!index,1) = %trkname
   !index = !index + 1
   for !ii2 = 1 to nqtrs
     if quarter(!lqtr+!ii2) = 4 then
       for !ii3 = 1 to !nstats + 1
         summary_tab(!index,!ii3) = {%trkname}_tab(!ii2+2,!ii3)
         next
        !index = !index + 1
       endif
     next
  ' make graph showing 70 and 90 percent bands
   graph {%trkname}_graph.band {%trkname}_lo90 {%trkname}_hi90 {%trkname}_lo70 _
       {%trkname}_hi70 {%trkname}_base
```

```
{%trkname}_graph.addtext(t) %trkname
   {%trkname}_graph.options size(6,4.5)
 next
, *****************************
' summary graph
 lur_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
 rff_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
 picx4_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 4-qtr Core Inflation Rate
 anngr_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 4-qtr Real GDP Growth Rate
 lur_graph.legend -display
 rff_graph.legend -display
 picx4_graph.legend -display
 anngr_graph.legend -display
 \verb|graph summary_graph.merge lur_graph rff_graph picx4_graph anngr_graph|
 summary_graph.legend -display
 summary_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) Stochastic Simulations\r(70 and 9
 show summary_graph
, *************
' summary spool
```

'summary spool
spool results
summary\_tab.deleterow(!index) 100
results.append summary\_tab
results.append summary\_graph
results.append error\_tab
results.display

Uses group2zero 81a, groupnames2string 81b, groupnew 82, interp\_lin 83, ld\_frbus\_cfs 169a 169b, ld\_frbus\_eqs 170b 171, ld\_varinfo 184 185, makestats 208, set\_fp 84, set\_mp 85a, and tableform 207.

```
207
       \langle form\ table\ 207 \rangle \equiv
                                                                                  (197)
          subroutine tableform(string %tabname, string %nrows)
            table(@val(%nrows),9) {%tabname}
            {%tabname}.setwidth(1:9) 8
            {%tabname}.setjust(r1c1:r{%nrows}c9) right
            {%tabname}.setformat(r2c2:r{%nrows}c9) f.3
            {%tabname}(1,1) = "qtr"
            {%tabname}(1,2) = "baseline"
            {\text{tabname}}(1,3) = \text{"mean"}
            {\text{tabname}}(1,4) = \text{"median"}
            {\text{tabname}}(1,5) = "stdev"
            {\text{tabname}}(1,6) = "90\%-low"
            {\text{tabname}}(1,7) = "90\%-hi"
            {\text{tabname}}(1,8) = "70\%-low"
            {\text{tabname}}(1,9) = "70\%-hi"
            endsub
       Defines:
```

frbuseview.nw

207

June 19, 2016

tableform, used in chunk 198.

```
208
       \langle make \ statistics \ 208 \rangle \equiv
                                                                         (197)
         subroutine makestats(string %trkname)
           %trkmat = %trkname + "_mat"
           %statsmat = %trkname + "_stats"
          matrix(nqtrs,8) {%statsmat}
           smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
         ' loop over each simulation quarter
           for !ii2 = 1 to ngtrs
           ' put simulation replications for this quarter into matrix tempm1
             matrix tempm1 = @sort(@rowextract({%trkmat},!ii2))
             {\statsmat}(!ii2,1) = {\strkname}(!lqtr + !ii2)
             {%statsmat}(!ii2,2) = @mean(tempm1)
             {\text{statsmat}}(!ii2,3) = tempm1(1,@floor(.50*nrepl))
             {%statsmat}(!ii2,4) = @stdev(tempm1)
             {\statsmat}(!ii2,5) = tempm1(1,@floor(.05*nrepl))
             {\statsmat}(!ii2,6) = tempm1(1,@floor(.95*nrepl))
             {\statsmat}(!ii2,7) = tempm1(1,@floor(.15*nrepl))
             {\%statsmat}(!ii2,8) = tempm1(1,@floor(.85*nrepl))
             next
         ' also create individual series for each statistic
           series {%trkname}_base = 0
           series {%trkname}_mn = 0
           series {%trkname}_med = 0
           series {%trkname}_se = 0
           series {\frac{\text{mone}}{1090} = 0}
           series {%trkname}_hi90 = 0
           series {\text{trkname}}_{1070} = 0
           series {%trkname}_hi70 = 0
           group {%trkname}_group {%trkname}_base {%trkname}_mn {%trkname}_med _
                 {%trkname}_se {%trkname}_lo90 {%trkname}_hi90 {%trkname}_lo70 _
                 {%trkname}_hi70
          mtos({%statsmat},{%trkname}_group)
           endsub
      Defines:
        makestats, used in chunk 198.
```

## $6.4.16 \quad srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg$

209a	$\langle srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg 209a \rangle \equiv \langle master\ library\ routines\ 209b \rangle$
	This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg.
209b	⟨master library routines 209b⟩≡ (209a)  '***********************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	$\langle quarterly\ date\ string\ shift\ 79 \rangle$
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	$\langle copy \ series \ into \ group \ 80 \rangle$
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>*</sup> ***********************************
	$\langle set\ group\ to\ zero\ 81a \rangle$
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	**************************************
	\(\lambda\) names of all series in group 81b\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\\
	***************************************
	***************************************
	$\langle create \ new \ group \ 82 \rangle$
	**************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	$\langle interpolate\ unavailable\ observations\ 83 \rangle$
	***************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	$\langle set\ fiscal\ policy\ option\ 84  angle$
	***************************************
	***************************************
	<sup>*</sup> ***********************************
	$\langle set \ monetary \ policy \ option \ 85a \rangle$
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	**************************************
	$\langle set\ monetary\ policy\ fed\ funds\ rate\ 85b  angle$

## 6.4.17 srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg

210  $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg\ 210 \rangle \equiv \langle mce\ solve\ library\ 211 \rangle$ 

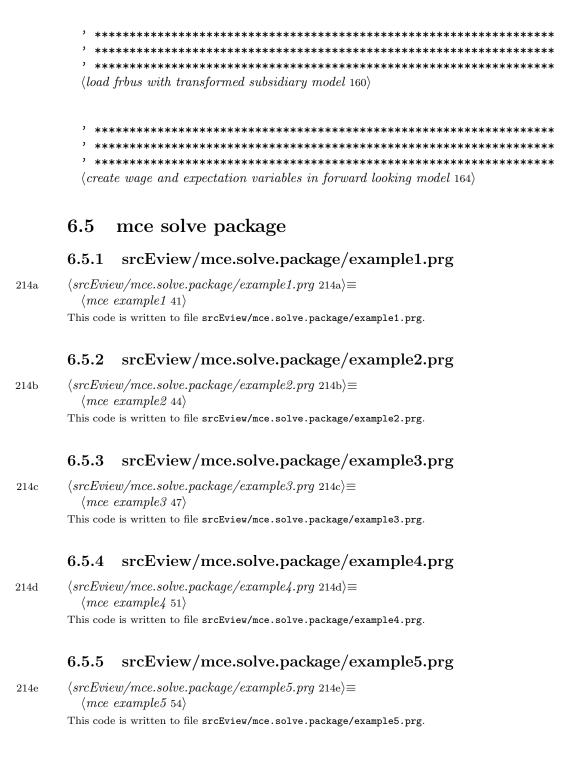
This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg. Defines:

 ${\tt mce\_solve\_library}, \ {\tt used} \ {\tt in} \ {\tt chunks} \ 7, \ 17, \ 23, \ 31, \ 41, \ 44, \ 47, \ 51, \ 54, \ {\tt and} \ 168.$ 

211	$\langle mce\ solve\ library\ 211 \rangle \equiv $ (210 215a)
	$\langle mce\ solve\ library\ change\ history\ 86 \rangle$
	<pre>' ************************************</pre>
	, ********************
	$\langle run \ model \ consistent \ expectations \ 88 \rangle$
	***************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	$\langle determine\ endogenous\ and\ exogenous\ variables\ 95  angle$
	, *************************************
	, *************************************
	' ************************************
	' ************************************
	, *************************************
	, ****************
	, ****************
	$\langle parse\ options\ not\ containing\ equal\ signs\ 102b \rangle$
	<pre>, ************************************</pre>
	, ********************
	, *************************************
	$\langle \mathit{create\ common\ variables}, \mathit{strings}, \mathit{matrices}, \mathit{vectors}, \mathit{and\ tables\ 103} \rangle$
	' ************************************
	<sup>,</sup> ************************************
	**************************************
	$\langle model\ consistent\ coefficient\ simulation\ 105 \rangle$

<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
$\langle solve\ model\ consistent\ instrument\ values\ 114 \rangle$
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
$\langle compute\ derivatives\ of\ mce\ targets\ wrt\ mce\ instruments\ 116 \rangle$
***************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
$\langle model\ consistent\ coefficient\ non-monotone\ step-length\ procedure\ 122 \rangle$
***************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
$\langle model\ consistent\ armijo\ optimization\ rule\ 124 \rangle$
, ************************************
***************************************
'*************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
$\langle set\ options\ based\ on\ defaults\ and\ overrides\ 127  angle$
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************
<sup>,</sup> ************************************

$\langle main\ unconstrained\ optimal\ control\ simulation\ 134 \rangle$
, ************************************
, ************************************
`************************************
, ************************************
, ************************************
'************************************
'*************************************



#### 6.5.6 srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg

215a  $\langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg 215a \rangle \equiv \langle mce solve library 211 \rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg. Defines:

mce\_solve\_library, used in chunks 7, 17, 23, 31, 41, 44, 47, 51, 54, and 168.

## 6.6 state space package

#### 6.6.1 srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg

215b  $\langle srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg 215b \rangle \equiv \langle data \ transformations 63 \rangle$ 

 $This\ code\ is\ written\ to\ file\ {\tt srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg}.$ 

## 6.6.2 srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg

215c  $\langle srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg 215c \rangle \equiv \langle estimation \ code \ 66 \rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg.

## 6.6.3 srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg

215d  $\langle srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg 215d \rangle \equiv \langle estimation \ model \ 59 \rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg.

## 6.6.4 srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg

215e  $\langle srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg$  215e $\rangle \equiv \langle supply filter$  70 $\rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg.

## $6.6.5 \quad srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg$

215f  $\langle srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg 215f \rangle \equiv \langle initial \ values \ 73 \rangle$ 

This code is written to file srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg.

# Notes, Bibliography and Indexes

#### 6.7 Chunks

```
\langle check.sh \ 168 \rangle
(compute derivatives of loss function targets wrt instruments 151)
(compute derivatives of mce targets wrt mce instruments 116)
\langle convert \ mcz \ inequality \ constraints \ 155 \rangle
\langle copy \ it \ 188a \rangle
\langle copy \ series \ into \ group \ 80 \rangle
(create common variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables 103)
\langle create \ new \ group \ 82 \rangle
(create wage and expectation variables in forward looking model 164)
\langle data \ transformations \ 63 \rangle
(determine default method, linesearch, and other options 98)
\langle determine\ endogenous\ and\ exogenous\ variables\ 95 \rangle
\langle estimation \ code \ 66 \rangle
\langle estimation \ model \ 59 \rangle
\langle find \ next \ delimiter \ 159 \rangle
(find variable description 196)
\langle form \ table \ 207 \rangle
⟨frbus example1 3⟩
\langle frbus\ example 2\ 7 \rangle
\langle frbus\ example 3\ 11 \rangle
(frbus example4 17)
\langle frbus\ ocpolicy\ 23 \rangle
\langle graph \ it \ 189 \rangle
(initial values 73)
(interpolate unavailable observations 83)
\langle load\ frbus\ coefficients\ 169b \rangle
(load frbus coefficients call 170a)
\langle load\ frbus\ equations\ 171 \rangle
⟨load frbus equations call 172a⟩
```

```
(load frbus with transformed subsidiary model 160)
\langle load \ mce \ coefficients \ 173 \rangle
⟨load mce coefficients call 174⟩
\langle load \ mce \ equations \ 176 \rangle
\langle load \ mce \ equations \ call \ 179 \rangle
\langle load \ some \ equations \ 181 \rangle
\langle load \ some \ equations \ call \ 183 \rangle
\langle load\ variable\ information\ 185 \rangle
⟨load variable information call 186a⟩
(main optimal control simulation with inequality constraints 138)
(main unconstrained optimal control simulation 134)
\langle make\ statistics\ 208 \rangle
\langle master\ library\ routines\ 209b \rangle
\langle mce\ example 1\ 41 \rangle
\langle mce\ example 2\ 44 \rangle
(mce example 3 47)
\langle mce\ example 4\ 51 \rangle
\langle mce\ example 5\ 54 \rangle
\langle mce \ solve \ library \ 211 \rangle
\langle mce \ solve \ library \ change \ history \ 86 \rangle
(model consistent armijo optimization rule 124)
\langle model\ consistent\ coefficient\ non-monotone\ step-length\ procedure\ 122 \rangle
(model consistent coefficient simulation 105)
(model consistent optimal time-consistent solution 143)
(names of all series in group 81b)
(parse options containing equal signs 102a)
(parse options not containing equal signs 102b)
(plot historical residuals of key equations 194)
\langle plot \ it \ 188b \rangle
⟨quarterly date string shift 79⟩
⟨run model consistent expectations 88⟩
⟨set fiscal policy option 84⟩
⟨set group to zero 81a⟩
(set monetary policy fed funds rate 85b)
(set monetary policy option 85a)
(set options based on defaults and overrides 127)
\langle setup.sh \ 167 \rangle
\langle shift\ left\ 158 \rangle
\langle simulate \ six \ ping \ simulations, \ aka \ simple \ IRFs \ 31 \rangle
(solve model consistent expectations model 153)
(solve model consistent instrument values 114)
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg 169a\rangle
⟨srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg 170b⟩
\(\srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prq\) 172b\\
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.egs/ld.mce.egs.prg 175 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg 180\rangle
```

```
\(\srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg\) 184\)
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg 186b \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg 186c \rangle
(srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg 186d)
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg 187a \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg 187b \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg\ 187c \rangle
(srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg 187d)
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg 193 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg\ 197 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg 209a \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg\ 210 \rangle
\langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg 214a \rangle
\langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg 214b \rangle
\langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg 214c \rangle
\langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg 214d \rangle
\langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg 214e \rangle
\langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg\ 215a \rangle
\langle srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg 215b \rangle
\langle srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg\ 215c \rangle
\langle srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg 215d \rangle
\langle srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg 215e \rangle
\langle srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg\ 215f \rangle
\langle stochastic\ simulations\ under\ variable\ expectations\ 198 \rangle
\langle supply \ filter \ 70 \rangle
\langle variable\ terminal\ values\ 125 \rangle
```

#### 6.8 Index

copyit: 31, <u>188a</u> data\_transformations: 59, 63, 70, 168 dateshift: 11, 23, 79, 83, 143 estimation\_code: 59, 66, 168 example1: 3, 41, 168 example2:  $\underline{7}, \underline{44}, 168$ example3: 11, 47, 168example4: 17, 51, 168 example5: 54, 168 find\_next\_delimit: 155, 159find\_var\_description: 194, 196 frbus.supply.filter: 70, 168frbus\_supply\_estimation: 59, 168 graphit: 31, 189 group2group: 80 group2zero: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 81a, 194, 198

groupnames2string: 81b, 198 groupnew: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 82, 194, 198 initial\_values: 59, 66, 73, 168 interp\_lin: 83, 198ld\_frbus\_cfs: 3, 11, 160, 168, 169a, 169b, 170a, 186b, 194, 198 ld\_frbus\_eqs: 3, 11, 160, 168, <u>170b</u>, <u>171</u>, 172a, 186b, 194, 198 ld\_mce\_cfs: 160, 168, <u>172b</u>, <u>173</u>, 174, 186b  $ld_mce_eqs: 160, 168, 175, 176, 179, 186b$ ld\_some\_eqs: 160, 168, <u>180</u>, <u>181</u>, 183, 186b ld\_varinfo: 168, <u>184</u>, <u>185</u>, 186a, 186b, 194, 198 make\_frbus\_mcevars: 7, 17, 23, 31, 86, 164 makestats: 198, 208mce\_load\_frbus: 7, 17, 23, 31, 86, 160 mce\_run: 7, 17, 23, 31, 41, 44, 47, 51, 54, 86, 88, 103, 105 mce\_solve\_library: 7, 17, 23, 31, 41, 44, 47, 51, 54, 168, 210, 215a mcz\_algo: 88, 98 mcz\_armijo: 105, 124  $mcz\_constraints: 127, 155$  $mcz_derivs: 103, 105, 116$ mcz\_equalopt: 88, 98, 102a, 105, 127, 160 mcz\_hasopt: 88, 102b, 105, 127  $mcz_lmr: 105, 122$  $mcz_opt: 127, 134$ mcz\_opt\_deriv: 134, 138, 143, <u>151</u> mcz\_opt\_qp: 86, 127, <u>138</u> mcz\_opt\_setup: 88, <u>127</u> mcz\_opt\_solve: 134, 138, <u>153</u> mcz\_opt\_tc: 86, 127, 143  $mcz\_parsemod: 88, 95$ mcz\_sim: 86, 88, <u>105</u>, 138, 143, 151, 153  $mcz\_sim\_setup: 88, 103$ mcz\_solvit: 86, 103, 105, 114, 122, 124 mcz\_terminal: 114, 125 ocpolicy: 23, 168 pings: 31, 168, <u>187d</u>  $plot_resids: 168, 193$ plotit: <u>188b</u>, 189 regadd: 168, 186b saved\_results\_new: 59  $set_fp: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 84, 198$ set\_mp: 3, 7, 11, 17, 23, 31, 85a, 198 set\_mpvars2rff: 85b shiftleft: 105, 158 $ss_estimation: 59, 66$ stochsim: 168, 197 tableform: 198, 207